# GU4204: Statistical Inference 

Bodhisattva Sen<br>Columbia University

February 27, 2020

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 5
1.1 Statistical Inference: Motivation ..... 5
1.2 Recap: Some results from probability ..... 5
1.3 Back to Example 1.1 ..... 8
1.4 Delta method ..... 8
1.5 Back to Example 1.1 ..... 10
2 Statistical Inference: Estimation ..... 11
2.1 Statistical model ..... 11
2.2 Method of Moments estimators ..... 13
3 Method of Maximum Likelihood ..... 16
3.1 Properties of MLEs ..... 20
3.1.1 Invariance ..... 20
3.1.2 Consistency ..... 21
3.2 Computational methods for approximating MLEs ..... 21
3.2.1 Newton's Method ..... 21
3.2.2 The EM Algorithm ..... 22
4 Principles of estimation ..... 23
4.1 Mean squared error ..... 24
4.2 Comparing estimators ..... 25
4.3 Unbiased estimators ..... 26
4.4 Sufficient Statistics ..... 28
5 Bayesian paradigm ..... 33
5.1 Prior distribution ..... 33
5.2 Posterior distribution ..... 34
5.3 Bayes Estimators ..... 36
5.4 Sampling from a normal distribution ..... 37
6 The sampling distribution of a statistic ..... 39
6.1 The gamma and the $\chi^{2}$ distributions ..... 39
6.1.1 The gamma distribution ..... 39
6.1.2 The Chi-squared distribution ..... 41
6.2 Sampling from a normal population ..... 42
6.3 The $t$-distribution ..... 45
7 Confidence intervals ..... 46
8 The (Cramer-Rao) Information Inequality ..... 51
9 Large Sample Properties of the MLE ..... 57
10 Hypothesis Testing ..... 61
10.1 Principles of Hypothesis Testing ..... 61
10.2 Critical regions and test statistics ..... 62
10.3 Power function and types of error ..... 64
10.4 Significance level ..... 66
10.5 $P$-value ..... 69
10.6 Testing simple hypotheses: optimal tests ..... 69
10.6.1 Minimizing the $\mathbb{P}$ (Type-II error) ..... 70
10.7 Uniformly most powerful (UMP) tests ..... 71
10.8 The $t$-test ..... 72
10.8.1 Testing hypotheses about the mean with unknown variance ..... 72
10.8.2 One-sided alternatives ..... 75
10.9 Comparing the means of two normal distributions (two-sample $t$ test) ..... 76
10.9.1 One-sided alternatives ..... 76
10.9.2 Two-sided alternatives ..... 77
10.10Comparing the variances of two normal distributions ( $F$-test) ..... 78
10.10.1 One-sided alternatives ..... 79
10.10.2 Two-sided alternatives ..... 79
10.11Likelihood ratio test ..... 80
10.12Equivalence of tests and confidence sets ..... 81
11 Linear regression ..... 84
11.1 Method of least squares ..... 84
11.1.1 Normal equations ..... 85
11.2 Simple linear regression ..... 86
11.2.1 Interpretation ..... 86
11.2.2 Estimated regression function ..... 87
11.2.3 Properties ..... 88
11.2.4 Estimation of $\sigma^{2}$ ..... 88
11.2.5 Gauss-Markov theorem ..... 88
11.3 Normal simple linear regression ..... 89
11.3.1 Maximum likelihood estimation ..... 89
11.3.2 Inference ..... 90
11.3.3 Inference about $\beta_{1}$ ..... 91
11.3.4 Sampling distribution of $\hat{\beta}_{0}$ ..... 94
11.3.5 Mean response ..... 95
11.3.6 Prediction interval ..... 96
11.3.7 Inference about both $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ simultaneously ..... 97
12 Linear models with normal errors ..... 98
12.1 Basic theory ..... 98
12.2 Maximum likelihood estimation ..... 99
12.2.1 Projections and orthogonality ..... 101
12.2.2 Testing hypotheis ..... 104
12.3 Testing for a component of $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ - not included in the final exam ..... 104
12.4 One-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) ..... 108
13 Nonparametrics ..... 110
13.1 The sample distribution function ..... 110
13.2 The Kolmogorov-Smirnov goodness-of-fit test ..... 112
13.2.1 The Kolmogorov-Smirnov test for two samples ..... 113
13.3 Bootstrap ..... 115
13.3.1 Bootstrap in general ..... 115
13.3.2 Parametric bootstrap ..... 116
13.3.3 The nonparametric bootstrap ..... 118
14 Review ..... 120
14.1 Statistics ..... 120

## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Statistical Inference: Motivation

Statistical inference is concerned with making probabilistic statements about random variables encountered in the analysis of data.

Examples: means, median, variances ...
Example 1.1. A company sells a certain kind of electronic component. The company is interested in knowing about how long a component is likely to last on average.

They can collect data on many such components that have been used under typical conditions.

They choose to use the family of exponential distributions ${ }^{1}$ to model the length of time (in years) from when a component is put into service until it fails.

The company believes that, if they knew the failure rate $\theta$, then $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ would be $n$ i.i.d random variables having the exponential distribution with parameter $\theta$. We may ask the following questions:

1. Can we estimate $\theta$ from this data? If so, what is a reasonable estimator?
2. Can we quantify the uncertainty in the estimation procedure, i.e., can we construct confidence interval for $\theta$ ?

### 1.2 Recap: Some results from probability

Definition 1 (Sample mean). Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are $n$ i.i.d r.v's with (unknown) mean $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ (i.e., $\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=\mu$ ) and variance $\sigma^{2}<\infty$. A natural "estimator" of $\mu$ is the sample mean (or average) defined as

$$
\bar{X}_{n}:=\frac{1}{n}\left(X_{1}+\ldots+X_{n}\right)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i} .
$$

Lemma 1.2. $\mathbb{E}\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)=\mu$ and $\operatorname{Var}\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)=\sigma^{2} / n$.
Proof. Observe that

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{E}\left(X_{i}\right)=\frac{1}{n} \cdot n \mu=\mu .
$$

[^0]

Figure 1: The plots illustrate the convergence (in probability) of the sample mean to the population mean.

Also,

$$
\operatorname{Var}\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)=\frac{1}{n^{2}} \operatorname{Var}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right)=\frac{1}{n^{2}} \cdot n \sigma^{2}=\frac{\sigma^{2}}{n} .
$$

Theorem 1.3 (Weak law of large numbers). Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are $n$ i.i.d r.v's with finite mean $\mu$. Then for any $\epsilon>0$, we have

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}-\mathbb{E}(X)\right|>\epsilon\right) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

This says that if we take the sample average of $n$ i.i.d r.v's the sample average will be close to the true population average. Figure 1 illustrates the result: The left panel shows the density of the data generating distribution (in this example we took $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ i.i.d. $\operatorname{Exp}(10)$ ); the middle and right panels show the distribution (histogram obtained from 1000 replicates) of $\bar{X}_{n}$ for $n=100$ and $n=1000$, respectively. We see that as the sample size increases, the distribution of the sample mean concentrates around $\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=1 / 10$ (i.e., $\bar{X}_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} 10^{-1}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ ).

Definition 2 (Convergence in probability). In the above, we say that the sample mean $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$ converges in probability to the true (population) mean.

More generally, we say that the sequence of r.v's $\left\{Z_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ converges to $Z$ in probability, and write

$$
Z_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} Z,
$$

if for every $\epsilon>0$,

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(\left|Z_{n}-Z\right|>\epsilon\right) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

This is equivalent to saying that for every $\epsilon>0$,

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}\left(\left|Z_{n}-Z\right| \leq \epsilon\right)=1 .
$$

Definition 3 (Convergence in distribution). We say a sequence of r.v's $\left\{Z_{n}\right\}_{i=1}^{n}$ with c.d.f's $F_{n}(\cdot)$ converges in distribution to $F$ if

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} F_{n}(u)=F(u)
$$

for all $u$ such that $F$ is continuous ${ }^{2}$ at $u$ (here $F$ is itself a c.d.f).
The second fundamental result in probability theory, after the law of large numbers (LLN), is the Central limit theorem (CLT), stated below. The CLT gives us the approximate (asymptotic) distribution of $\bar{X}_{n}$
Theorem 1.4 (Central limit theorem). If $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$ are i.i.d with mean zero and variance 1, then

$$
\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i} \xrightarrow{d} N(0,1)
$$

where $N(0,1)$ is the standard normal distribution. More generally, the usual rescaling tell us that, for $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$ are i.i.d with mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}<\infty$

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\mu\right) \equiv \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\mu\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0, \sigma^{2}\right) .
$$

The following plots illustrate the CLT: The left, center and right panels of Figure 2 show the (scaled) histograms of $\bar{X}_{n}$ when $n=10,30$ and 100, respectively (as before, in this example we took $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ i.i.d. $\operatorname{Exp}(10)$; the histograms are obtained from 5000 independent replicates). We also overplot the normal density with mean 0.1 and variance $10^{-1} / \sqrt{n}$. The remarkable agreement between the two densities illustrates the power of the CLT. Observe that the original distribution of the $X_{i}$ 's is skewed and highly nor-normal $(\operatorname{Exp}(10))$, but even for $n=10$, the distribution of $\bar{X}_{10}$ is quite close to being normal.

Another class of useful results we will use very much in this course go by the name "continuous mapping theorem". Here are two such results.

Theorem 1.5. If $Z_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} b$ and if $g(\cdot)$ is a function that is continuous at $b$, then

$$
g\left(Z_{n}\right) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} g(b)
$$

[^1]

Figure 2: The plots illustrate the convergence (in distribution) of the sample mean to a normal distribution.

Theorem 1.6. If $Z_{n} \xrightarrow{d} Z$ and if $g(\cdot)$ is a function that is continuous, then

$$
g\left(Z_{n}\right) \xrightarrow{d} g(Z) .
$$

### 1.3 Back to Example 1.1

In the first example we have the following results:

- by the LLN, the sample mean $\bar{X}_{n}$ converges in probability to the expectation $1 / \theta$ (failure rate), i.e.,

$$
\bar{X}_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} \frac{1}{\theta}
$$

- by the continuous mapping theorem (see Theorem 1.5) $\bar{X}_{n}^{-1}$ converges in probability to $\theta$, i.e.,

$$
\bar{X}_{n}^{-1} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} \theta ;
$$

- by the CLT, we know that

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\theta^{-1}\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0, \theta^{-2}\right)
$$

where $\operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta^{-2}$;

- But how does one find an approximation to the distribution of $\bar{X}_{n}^{-1}$ ?


### 1.4 Delta method

The first thing to note is that if $\left\{Z_{n}\right\}_{i=1}^{n}$ converges in distribution (or probability) to a constant $\theta$, then $g\left(Z_{n}\right) \xrightarrow{d} g(\theta)$, for any continuous function $g(\cdot)$.

We can also "zoom in" to look at the asymptotic distribution (not just the limit point) of the sequence of r.v's $\left\{g\left(Z_{n}\right)\right\}_{i=1}^{n}$, whenever $g(\cdot)$ is sufficiently smooth.
Theorem 1.7. Let $Z_{1}, Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}$ be a sequence of r.v's and let $Z$ be a r.v with a continuous c.d.f $F^{*}$. Let $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$, and let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots$, be a sequence such that $a_{n} \rightarrow \infty$. Suppose that

$$
a_{n}\left(Z_{n}-\theta\right) \xrightarrow{d} F^{*} .
$$

Let $g(\cdot)$ be a function with a continuous derivative such that $g^{\prime}(\theta) \neq 0$. Then

$$
a_{n} \frac{g\left(Z_{n}\right)-g(\theta)}{g^{\prime}(\theta)} \xrightarrow{d} F^{*} .
$$

Proof. We will only give an outline of the proof (think $a_{n}=n^{1 / 2}$, if $Z_{n}$ as the sample mean). As $a_{n} \rightarrow \infty, Z_{n}$ must get close to $\theta$ with high probability as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
As $g(\cdot)$ is continuous, $g\left(Z_{n}\right)$ will be close to $g(\theta)$ with high probability.
Let's say $g(\cdot)$ has a Taylor expansion around $\theta$, i.e.,

$$
g\left(Z_{n}\right) \approx g(\theta)+g^{\prime}(\theta)\left(Z_{n}-\theta\right)
$$

where we have ignored all terms involving $\left(Z_{n}-\theta\right)^{2}$ and higher powers.
Then if

$$
a_{n}\left(Z_{n}-\theta\right) \xrightarrow{d} Z,
$$

for some limit distribution $F^{*}$ and a sequence of constants $a_{n} \rightarrow \infty$, then

$$
a_{n} \frac{g\left(Z_{n}\right)-g(\theta)}{g^{\prime}(\theta)} \approx a_{n}\left(Z_{n}-\theta\right) \xrightarrow{d} F^{*} .
$$

In other words, limit distributions are passed through functions in a pretty simple way. This is called the delta method (I suppose because of the deltas and epsilons involved in this kind of limiting argument), and we'll be using it a lot.

The main application is when we've already proven a CLT for $Z_{n}$,

$$
\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(Z_{n}-\mu\right)}{\sigma} \xrightarrow{d} N(0,1)
$$

in which case

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(g\left(Z_{n}\right)-g(\mu)\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0, \sigma^{2}\left(g^{\prime}(\mu)\right)^{2}\right) .
$$

Exercise 1: Assume $n^{1 / 2} Z_{n} \xrightarrow{d} N(0,1)$. What is the asymptotic distribution of

1. $g\left(Z_{n}\right)=\left(Z_{n}-1\right)^{2}$ ?
2. What about $g\left(Z_{n}\right)=Z_{n}^{2}$ ? Does anything go wrong when applying the delta method in this case? Can you fix this problem?

### 1.5 Back to Example 1.1

By the delta method, we can show that

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}^{-1}-\theta\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0,\left(\theta^{2}\right)^{2} \theta^{-2}\right),
$$

where we have considered $g(x)=\frac{1}{x} ; g^{\prime}(x)=-\frac{1}{x^{2}}$ (observe that $g$ is continuous on $(0, \infty))$. Note that the variance of $X_{1}$ is $\operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta^{-2}$.

## 2 Statistical Inference: Estimation

### 2.1 Statistical model

Definition 4 (Statistical model). A statistical model is

- an identification of random variables of interest,
- a specification of a joint distribution or a family of possible joint distributions for the observable random variables,
- the identification of any parameters of those distributions that are assumed unknown,
- (Bayesian approach, if desired) a specification for a (joint) distribution for the unknown parameter(s).

Definition 5 (Statistical Inference). Statistical inference is a procedure that produces a probabilistic statement about some or all parts of a statistical model.

Definition 6 (Parameter space). In a problem of statistical inference, a characteristic or combination of characteristics that determine the joint distribution for the random variables of interest is called a parameter of the distribution.

The set $\Omega$ of all possible values of a parameter $\theta$ or of a vector of parameters $\theta=\left(\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{k}\right)$ is called the parameter space.

Examples:

- The family of binomial distributions has parameters $n$ and $p$.
- The family of normal distributions is parameterized by the mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$ of each distribution (so $\theta=\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ can be considered a pair of parameters, and $\Omega=\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}$.
- The family of exponential distributions is parameterized by the rate parameter $\theta$ (the failure rate must be positive: $\Omega$ will be the set of all positive numbers).

The parameter space $\Omega$ must contain all possible values of the parameters in a given problem.

Example 2.1. Suppose that $n$ patients are going to be given a treatment for a condition and that we will observe for each patient whether or not they recover from the condition.

For each patient $i=1,2, \ldots$, let $X_{i}=1$ if patient $i$ recovers, and let $X_{i}=0$ if not. As a collection of possible distributions for $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$, we could choose to say that the $X_{i}$ 's are i.i.d. having the Bernoulli distribution with parameter $p$, for $0 \leq p \leq 1$.

In this case, the parameter $p$ is known to lie in the closed interval $[0,1]$, and this interval could be taken as the parameter space. Notice also that by the LLN, $p$ is the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$ of the proportion of the first $n$ patients who recover.

Definition 7 (Statistic). Suppose that the observable random variables of interest are $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$. Let $\varphi$ be a real-valued function of $n$ real variables. Then the random variable $T=\varphi\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is called $a$ statistic.

Examples:

- the sample mean $\bar{X}_{n}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$;
- the maximum $X_{(n)}$ of the values $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$;
- the sample variance $S_{n}^{2}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$ of the values $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$.

Definition 8 (Estimator/Estimate). Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be observable data whose joint distribution is indexed by a parameter $\theta$ taking values in a subset $\Omega$ of the real line.

An estimator $\widehat{\theta}_{n}$ of the parameter $\theta$ is a real-valued function $\widehat{\theta}_{n}=\varphi\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.
If $\left\{X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n}\right\}$ is observed, then $\varphi\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ is called the estimate of $\theta$.
Definition 9 (Estimator/Estimate). Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be observable data whose joint distribution is indexed by a parameter $\theta$ taking values in a subset $\Omega$ of d-dimensional space, i.e., $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$.

Let $h: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$, be a function from $\Omega$ into d-dimensional space. Define $\psi=h(\theta)$.
An estimator of $\psi$ is a function $g\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ that takes values in d-dimensional space. If $\left\{X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n}\right\}$ are observed, then $g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ is called the estimate of $\psi$.

When $h$ in Definition 9 is the identity function $h(\theta)=\theta$, then $\psi=\theta$ and we are estimating the original parameter $\theta$. When $g(\theta)$ is one coordinate of $\theta$, then the $\psi$ that we are estimating is just that one coordinate.

Definition 10 (Consistent (in probability) estimator). A sequence of estimators $\widehat{\theta}_{n}$ that converges in probability to the unknown value of the parameter $\theta$ being estimated is called a consistent sequence of estimators, i.e., $\widehat{\theta}_{n}$ is consistent if and only if for every $\epsilon>0$,

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\widehat{\theta}_{n}-\theta\right|>\epsilon\right) \rightarrow 0, \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty
$$

In this Chapter we shall discuss three types of estimators:

- Method of moments estimators,
- Maximum likelihood estimators, and
- Bayes estimators.


### 2.2 Method of Moments estimators

The method of moments (MOM) is an intuitive method for estimating parameters when other, more attractive, methods may be too difficult (to implement/compute).

Definition 11 (Method of moments estimator). Assume that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from a distribution that is indexed by a $k$-dimensional parameter $\theta$ and that has at least $k$ finite moments. For $j=1, \ldots, k$, let

$$
\mu_{j}(\theta):=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{1}^{j}\right)
$$

Suppose that the function $\mu(\theta)=\left(\mu_{1}(\theta), \ldots, \mu_{k}(\theta)\right)$ is a one-to-one function of $\theta$. Let $M\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{k}\right)$ denote the inverse function, that is, for all $\theta$,

$$
\theta=M\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{k}\right)
$$

Define the sample moments as

$$
\hat{\mu}_{j}:=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{j} \quad \text { for } j=1, \ldots, k
$$

The method of moments estimator of $\theta$ is $M\left(\hat{\mu}_{1}, \ldots, \hat{\mu}_{k}\right)$.

The usual way of implementing the method of moments is to set up the $k$ equations

$$
\hat{\mu}_{j}=\mu_{j}(\theta), \quad \text { for } j=1, \ldots, k,
$$

and then solve for $\theta$.

Example 2.2. Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be from a $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ distribution. Thus $\theta=\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$. What is the MOM estimator of $\theta$ ?

Solution: Consider $\mu_{1}=\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)$ and $\mu_{2}=\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)$. Clearly, the parameter $\theta$ can be expressed as a function of the first two population moments, since

$$
\mu=\mu_{1}, \sigma^{2}=\mu_{2}-\mu_{1}^{2} .
$$

To get MOM estimates of $\mu$ and $\sigma^{2}$ we are going to plug in the sample moments. Thus

$$
\hat{\mu}=\hat{\mu}_{1}=\bar{X},
$$

and

$$
\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}^{2}-\bar{X}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2}
$$

where we have used the fact that $\hat{\mu}_{2}=n^{-1} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}^{2}$.

Example 2.3. Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \beta), \alpha, \beta>0$. Thus, $\theta=(\alpha, \beta) \in \Omega:=\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}$. The first two moments of this distribution are:

$$
\mu_{1}(\theta)=\frac{\alpha}{\beta}, \quad \mu_{2}(\theta)=\frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{\beta^{2}}
$$

which implies that

$$
\alpha=\frac{\mu_{1}^{2}}{\mu_{2}-\mu_{1}^{2}}, \quad \beta=\frac{\mu_{1}}{\mu_{2}-\mu_{1}^{2}}
$$

The MOM says that we replace the right-hand sides of these equations by the sample moments and then solve for $\alpha$ and $\beta$. In this case, we get

$$
\hat{\alpha}=\frac{\hat{\mu}_{1}^{2}}{\hat{\mu}_{2}-\hat{\mu}_{1}^{2}}, \quad \hat{\beta}=\frac{\hat{\mu}_{1}}{\hat{\mu}_{2}-\hat{\mu}_{1}^{2}}
$$

MOM can thus be thought of as "plug-in" estimates; to get an estimate $\hat{\theta}$ of $\theta=$ $M\left(\mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \ldots, \mu_{k}\right)$, we plug-in estimates of the $\mu_{i}$ 's, which are the $\hat{\mu}_{i}$ 's, to get $\hat{\theta}$.

Result: If $M$ is continuous, then the fact that $m_{i}$ converges in probability to $\mu_{i}$, for every $i=1, \ldots, k$, entails that

$$
\hat{\theta}=M\left(\hat{\mu}_{1}, \hat{\mu}_{2}, \ldots, \hat{\mu}_{k}\right) \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} M\left(\mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \ldots, \mu_{k}\right)=\theta
$$

Thus MOM estimators are consistent under mild assumptions.

Proof. LLN: the sample moments converge in probability to the population moments $\mu_{1}(\theta), \ldots, \mu_{k}(\theta)$.

The generalization of the continuous mapping theorem (Theorem 6.2.5 in the book) to functions of $k$ variables implies that $M(\cdot)$ evaluated at the sample moments converges in probability to $\theta$, i.e., the MOM estimator converges in probability to $\theta$.

Remark: In general, we might be interested in estimating $\Psi(\theta)$ where $\Psi(\theta)$ is some (known) function of $\theta$; in such a case, the MOM estimate of $\Psi(\theta)$ is $\Psi(\hat{\theta})$ where $\hat{\theta}$ is the MOM estimate of $\theta$.

Example 2.4. Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be the indicators of $n$ Bernoulli trials with success probability $\theta$. We are going to find a MOM estimator of $\theta$.

Solution: Note that $\theta$ is the probability of success and satisifes,

$$
\theta=\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right), \theta=\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)
$$

Thus we can get MOMs of $\theta$ based on both the first and the second moments. Thus,

$$
\hat{\theta}_{M O M}=\bar{X}
$$

and

$$
\hat{\theta}_{M O M}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}=\bar{X}
$$

Example 2.5. Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d. Poisson $(\lambda), \lambda>0$. Find the MOM estimator of $\lambda$.

Solution: We know that,

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=\mu_{1}=\lambda
$$

and $\operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}\right)=\mu_{2}-\mu_{1}^{2}=\lambda$. Thus

$$
\mu_{2}=\lambda+\lambda^{2} .
$$

Now, a MOM estimate of $\lambda$ is clearly given by $\hat{\lambda}=\hat{\mu}_{1}=\bar{X}$; thus a MOM estimate of $\mu_{2}=\lambda^{2}+\lambda$ is given by $\bar{X}^{2}+\bar{X}$.

On the other hand, the obvious MOM estimate of $\hat{\mu}_{2}$ is $\hat{\mu}_{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}^{2}$. However these two estimates are not necessarily equal; in other words, it is not necessarily the case that $\bar{X}^{2}+\bar{X}=(1 / n) \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{j}^{2}$.
This illustrates one of the disadvantages of MOM estimates - they may not be uniquely defined.

Example 2.6. Consider $n$ systems with failure times $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ assumed to be i.i.d $\operatorname{Exp}(\lambda), \lambda>0$. Find the MOM estimators of $\lambda$.

Solution: It is not difficult to show that

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{\lambda}, \mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)=\frac{2}{\lambda^{2}}
$$

Therefore

$$
\lambda=\frac{1}{\mu_{1}}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\mu_{2}}} .
$$

The above equations lead to two different MOM estimators for $\lambda$; the estimate based on the first moment is

$$
\hat{\lambda}_{M O M}=\frac{1}{\hat{\mu}_{1}},
$$

and the estimate based on the second moment is

$$
\hat{\lambda}_{M O M}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\hat{\mu}_{2}}} .
$$

Once again, note the non-uniqueness of the estimates.

We finish up this section by some key observations about method of moments estimates.
(i) The MOM principle generally leads to procedures that are easy to compute and which are therefore valuable as preliminary estimates.
(ii) For large sample sizes, these estimates are likely to be close to the value being estimated (consistency).
(iii) The prime disadvantage is that they do not provide a unique estimate and this has been illustrated before with examples.

## 3 Method of Maximum Likelihood

As before, we have i.i.d observations $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ with common probability density (or mass function) $f(x, \theta)$, where $\theta \in \Omega \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{k}$ is a Euclidean parameter indexing the class of distributions being considered.

The goal is to estimate $\theta$ or some $\Psi(\theta)$ where $\Psi$ is some known function of $\theta$.

Definition 12 (Likelihood function). The likelihood function for the sample $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=$ $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is

$$
L_{n}(\theta) \equiv L_{n}\left(\theta, \boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right):=\prod_{i=1}^{n} f\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)
$$

This is simply the joint density (or mass function) but we now think of this as a function of $\theta$ for a fixed $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$; namely the $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ that is realized.

Intuition: Suppose for the moment that $X_{i}$ 's are discrete, so that $f$ is actually a p.m.f. Then $L_{n}(\theta)$ is exactly the probability that the observed data is realized or "happens".

We now seek to obtain that $\theta \in \Omega$ for which $L_{n}(\theta)$ is maximized. Call this $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ (assume that it exists). Thus $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ is that value of the parameter that maximizes the likelihood function, or in other words, makes the observed data most likely.

It makes sense to pick $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ as a guess for $\theta$.
When the $X_{i}$ 's are continuous and $f(x, \theta)$ is in fact a density we do the same thing maximize the likelihood function as before and prescribe the maximizer as an estimate of $\theta$.

For obvious reasons, $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ is called an maximum likelihood estimate (MLE).

Note that $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ is itself a deterministic function of $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and is therefore a random variable. Of course there is nothing that guarantees that $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ is unique, even if it exists.

Sometimes, in the case of multiple maximizers, we choose one which is more desirable according to some "sensible" criterion.

Example 3.1. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Poisson( $\theta$ ), $\theta>0$. Find the MLE of $\theta$.

Solution: In this case, it is easy to see that

$$
L_{n}(\theta)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{e^{-\theta} \theta^{X_{i}}}{X_{i}!}=C\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right) e^{-n \theta} \theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}
$$

To maximize this expression, we set

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log L_{n}(\theta)=0
$$

This yields that

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}\left[-n \theta+\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right) \log \theta\right]=0
$$

i.e.,

$$
-n+\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}{\theta}=0,
$$

showing that

$$
\hat{\theta}_{n}=\bar{X}
$$

It can be checked (by computing the second derivative at $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ ) that the stationary point indeed gives (a unique) maximum (or by noting that the log-likelihood is a (strictly) concave function).

Exercise 2: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $\operatorname{Ber}(\theta)$ where $0 \leq \theta \leq 1$. What is the MLE of $\theta$ ?

Example 3.2. Suppose $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Uniform $([0, \theta])$ random variables, where $\theta>0$. We want to obtain the MLE of $\theta$.

Solution: The likelihood function is given by,

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{n}(\theta) & =\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{\theta} I_{[0, \theta]}\left(X_{i}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{\theta^{n}} \prod_{i=1}^{n} I_{\left[X_{i}, \infty\right)}(\theta) \\
& =\frac{1}{\theta^{n}} I_{\left[\max _{i=1, \ldots, n} X_{i}, \infty\right)}(\theta) .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is then clear that $L_{n}(\theta)$ is constant and equals $1 / \theta^{n}$ for $\theta \geq \max _{i=1, \ldots, n} X_{i}$ and is 0 otherwise. By plotting the graph of this function, you can see that

$$
\hat{\theta}_{n}=\max _{i=1, \ldots, n} X_{i}
$$

Here, differentiation will not help you to get the MLE because the likelihood function is not differentiable at the point where it hits the maximum.

Example 3.3. Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$. We want to find the MLEs of the mean $\mu$ and the variance $\sigma^{2}$.

Solution: We write down the likelihood function first. This is,

$$
L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2} \sigma^{n}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\mu\right)^{2}\right)
$$

It is easy to see that,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\log L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right) & =-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\mu\right)^{2}+\text { constant } \\
& =-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}-\frac{n}{2 \sigma^{2}}\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\mu\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

To maximize the above expression w.r.t $\mu$ and $\sigma^{2}$ we proceed as follows. For any $\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ we have,

$$
\log L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right) \leq \log L_{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}, \sigma^{2}\right)
$$

showing that we can choose $\hat{\mu}_{M L E}=\bar{X}_{n}$.
It then remains to maximize $\log L_{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ with respect to $\sigma^{2}$ to find $\hat{\sigma}_{M L E}^{2}$.
Now,

$$
\log L_{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}, \sigma^{2}\right)=-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}
$$

Differentiating the left-side w.r.t $\sigma^{2}$ gives,

$$
-\frac{n}{2 \sigma^{2}}+\frac{1}{2\left(\sigma^{2}\right)^{2}} n \hat{\sigma}^{2}=0
$$

where $\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$. The above equation leads to,

$$
\hat{\sigma}_{M L E}^{2}=\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2} .
$$

The fact that this actually gives a global maximizer follows from the fact that the second derivative at $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ is negative.

Note that, once again, the MOM estimates coincide with the MLEs.

Exercise 3: We now tweak the above situation a bit. Suppose now that we restrict the parameter space, so that $\mu$ has to be non-negative, i.e., $\mu \geq 0$.

Thus we seek to maximize $\log L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ but subject to the constraint that $\mu \geq 0$ and $\sigma^{2}>0$. Find the MLEs in this scenario.

Example 3.4 (non-uniqueness of MLE). Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from the uniform distribution on the interval $[\theta, \theta+1]$, where $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ is unknown. We want to find the MLE of $\theta$. Show that it is possible to select as an MLE any value of $\theta$ in the interval $\left[X_{(n)}-1, X_{(1)}\right]$, and thus the MLE is not unique.

Example 3.5 (MLEs might not exist). Consider a random variable $X$ that can come with equal probability either from a $N(0,1)$ or from $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, where both $\mu$ and $\sigma$ are unknown.

Thus, the p.d.f. $f\left(\cdot, \mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ of $X$ is given by

$$
f\left(x, \mu, \sigma^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} e^{-x^{2} / 2}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi} \sigma} e^{-(x-\mu)^{2} /\left(2 \sigma^{2}\right)}\right] .
$$

Suppose now that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from this distribution. As usual, the likelihood function

$$
L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} f\left(X_{i}, \mu, \sigma^{2}\right)
$$

We want to find the MLE of $\theta=\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$.
Let $X_{k}$ denote one of the observed values. Note that

$$
\max _{\mu \in \mathbb{R}, \sigma^{2}>0} L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right) \geq L_{n}\left(X_{k}, \sigma^{2}\right) \geq \frac{1}{2^{n}}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi} \sigma}\right] \prod_{i \neq k} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} e^{-X_{i}^{2} / 2}
$$

Thus, if we let $\mu=X_{k}$ and let $\sigma^{2} \rightarrow 0$ then the factor $f\left(X_{k}, \mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ will grow large without bound, while each factor $f\left(X_{i}, \mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, for $i \neq k$, will approach the value

$$
\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2 \pi}} e^{-X_{i}^{2} / 2}
$$

Hence, when $\mu=X_{k}$ and $\sigma^{2} \rightarrow 0$, we find that $L_{n}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right) \rightarrow \infty$.
Note that 0 is not a permissible estimate of $\sigma^{2}$, because we know in advance that $\sigma>0$. Since the likelihood function can be made arbitrarily large by choosing $\mu=X_{k}$ and choosing $\sigma^{2}$ arbitrarily close to 0 , it follows that the MLE does not exist.

### 3.1 Properties of MLEs

### 3.1.1 Invariance

Theorem 3.6 (Invariance property of MLEs). If $\widehat{\theta}_{n}$ is the MLE of $\theta$ and if $\Psi$ is any function, then $\Psi\left(\widehat{\theta}_{n}\right)$ is the MLE of $\Psi(\theta)$.

See Theorem 7.6.2 and Example 7.6.3 in the text book.
Thus if $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $\mathrm{N}\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, then the MLE of $\mu^{2}$ is $\bar{X}_{n}^{2}$.

### 3.1.2 Consistency

Consider an estimation problem in which a random sample is to be taken from a distribution involving a parameter $\theta$.

Then, under certain conditions, which are typically satisfied in practical problems, the sequence of MLEs is consistent, i.e.,

$$
\widehat{\theta}_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} \theta, \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

### 3.2 Computational methods for approximating MLEs

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d from a Gamma distribution for which the p.d.f is as follows:

$$
f(x, \alpha)=\frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x}, \quad \text { for } x>0
$$

The likelihood function is

$$
L_{n}(\alpha)=\frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)^{n}}\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right)^{\alpha-1} e^{-\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}
$$

and thus the log-likelihood is

$$
\ell_{n}(\alpha) \equiv \log L_{n}(\alpha)=-n \log \Gamma(\alpha)+(\alpha-1) \sum_{i=1}^{n} \log \left(X_{i}\right)-\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}
$$

The MLE of $\alpha$ will be the value of $\alpha$ that satisfies the equation

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} \ell_{n}(\alpha)=-n \frac{\Gamma^{\prime}(\alpha)}{\Gamma(\alpha)}+\sum_{i=1}^{n} \log \left(X_{i}\right)=0 \\
\text { i.e., } \frac{\Gamma^{\prime}(\alpha)}{\Gamma(\alpha)}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \log \left(X_{i}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

### 3.2.1 Newton's Method

Let $f(x)$ be a real-valued function of a real variable, and suppose that we wish to solve the equation

$$
f(x)=0
$$

Let $x_{1}$ be an initial guess at the solution.

Newton's method replaces the initial guess with the updated guess

$$
x_{2}=x_{1}-\frac{f\left(x_{1}\right)}{f^{\prime}\left(x_{1}\right)} .
$$

The rationale behind the Newton's method is: approximate the curve by a line tangent to the curve passing through the point $\left(x_{1}, f\left(x_{1}\right)\right)$. The approximating line crosses the horizontal axis at the revised guess $x_{1}$. [Draw a figure!]

Typically, one replaces the initial guess with the revised guess and iterates Newton's method until the results stabilize (see e.g., http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newton's_method).

### 3.2.2 The EM Algorithm

Read Section 7.6 of the text-book. I will cover this later, if time permits.

## 4 Principles of estimation

Setup: Our data $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots X_{n}$ are i.i.d observations from the distribution $P_{\theta}$ where $\theta \in \Omega$, the parameter space ( $\Omega$ is assumed to be the $k$-dimensional Euclidean space). We assume identifiability of the parameter, i.e. $\theta_{1} \neq \theta_{2} \Rightarrow P_{\theta_{1}} \neq P_{\theta_{2}}$.

Estimation problem: Consider now, the problem of estimating $g(\theta)$ where $g$ is some function of $\theta$.

In many cases $g(\theta)=\theta$ itself.
Generally $g(\theta)$ will describe some important aspect of the distribution $P_{\theta}$.
Our estimator of $g(\theta)$ will be some function of our observed data $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.

In general there will be several different estimators of $g(\theta)$ which may all seem reasonable from different perspectives - the question then becomes one of finding the most optimal one.

This requires an objective measure of performance of an estimator.
If $T_{n}$ estimates $g(\theta)$ a criterion that naturally suggests itself is the distance of $T_{n}$ from $g(\theta)$. Good estimators are those for which $\left|T_{n}-g(\theta)\right|$ is generally small.

Since $T_{n}$ is a random variable no deterministic statement can be made about the absolute deviation; however what we can expect of a good estimator is a high chance of remaining close to $g(\theta)$.

Also as $n$, the sample size, increases we get hold of more information and hence expect to be able to do a better job of estimating $g(\theta)$.

These notions when coupled together give rise to the consistency requirement for a sequence of estimators $T_{n}$; as $n$ increases, $T_{n}$ ought to converge in probability to $g(\theta)$ (under the probability distribution $P_{\theta}$ ). In other words, for any $\epsilon>0$,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(\left|T_{n}-g(\theta)\right|>\epsilon\right) \rightarrow 0
$$

The above is clearly a large sample property; what it says is that with probability increasing to 1 (as the sample size grows), $T_{n}$ estimates $g(\theta)$ to any pre-determined level of accuracy.

However, the consistency condition alone, does not tell us anything about how well we are performing for any particular sample size, or the rate at which the above probability is going to 0 .

### 4.1 Mean squared error

Question: For a fixed sample size $n$, how do we measure the performance of an estimator $T_{n}$ ?

A way out of this difficulty is to obtain an average measure of the error, or in other words, average out $\left|T_{n}-g(\theta)\right|$ over all possible realizations of $T_{n}$.

The resulting quantity is then still a function of $\theta$ but no longer random. It is called the mean absolute error and can be written compactly (using acronym) as:

$$
\mathrm{MAD}:=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left|T_{n}-g(\theta)\right|\right]
$$

However, it is more common to avoid absolute deviations and work with the square of the deviation, integrated out as before over the distribution of $T_{n}$. This is called the mean squared error (MSE) and is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{MSE}\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right):=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(T_{n}-g(\theta)\right)^{2}\right] . \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Of course, this is meaningful, only if the above quantity is finite for all $\theta$. Good estimators are those for which the MSE is generally not too high, whatever be the value of $\theta$.

There is a standard decomposition of the MSE that helps us understand its components. This is one of the most

Theorem 4.1. For any estimator $T_{n}$ of $g(\theta)$, we have

$$
\operatorname{MSE}\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right)=\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)+b\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right)^{2}
$$

where $b\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)$ is the bias of $T_{n}$ as an estimator of $g(\theta)$.
Proof. We have,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{MSE}\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right) & =\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(T_{n}-g(\theta)\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(T_{n}-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)+\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(T_{n}-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)\right)^{2}\right]+\left(\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right)^{2} \\
& \quad+2 \mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(T_{n}-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)\right)\left(\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right)\right] \\
& =\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)+b\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right)^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
b\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right):=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)
$$

is the bias of $T_{n}$ as an estimator of $g(\theta)$.
The cross product term in the above display vanishes since $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)$ is a constant and $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)\right)=0$.


Figure 3: The plot shows the mean squared error for three estimators $\delta_{1}, \delta_{2}$ and $\delta_{2}$. Here $R\left(\theta, \delta_{i}\right)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\left(\delta_{i}(X)-\theta\right)^{2}\right]$ where $i=0,1,2$.

The bias measures, on an average, by how much $T_{n}$ overestimate or underestimate $g(\theta)$. If we think of the expectation $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)$ as the center of the distribution of $T_{n}$, then the bias measures by how much the center deviates from the target.

The variance of $T_{n}$, of course, measures how closely $T_{n}$ is clustered around its center. Ideally one would like to minimize both simultaneously, but unfortunately this is rarely possible.

### 4.2 Comparing estimators

Two estimators $T_{n}$ and $S_{n}$ can be compared on the basis of their MSEs. Under parameter value $\theta, T_{n}$ dominates $S_{n}$ as an estimator if

$$
\operatorname{MSE}\left(T_{n}, \theta\right) \leq \operatorname{MSE}\left(S_{n}, \theta\right) \quad \text { for all } \theta \in \Omega
$$

In this situation we say that $S_{n}$ is inadmissible in the presence of $T_{n}$.
The use of the term "inadmissible" hardly needs explanation. If, for all possible values of the parameter, we incur less error using $T_{n}$ instead of $S_{n}$ as an estimate of $g(\theta)$, then clearly there is no point in considering $S_{n}$ as an estimator at all.

Continuing along this line of thought, is there an estimate that improves all others? In other words, is there an estimator that makes every other estimator inadmissible? The answer is no, except in certain pathological situations.

Example 4.2. Suppose that $X \sim \operatorname{Binomial}(100, \theta)$, where $\theta \in[0,1]$. The goal is to estimate the unknown parameter $\theta$. A natural estimator of $\theta$ in this problem is $\delta_{0}(X)=X / 100$ (which is also the MLE and the method of moments estimator). Show that

$$
R\left(\theta, \delta_{0}\right):=\operatorname{MSE}\left(\delta_{0}(X), \theta\right)=\frac{\theta(1-\theta)}{100}, \quad \text { for } \theta \in[0,1]
$$

The MSE of $\delta_{0}(X)$ as a function of $\theta$ is given in Figure 3.

We can also consider two other estimators in this problem: $\delta_{1}(X)=(X+3) / 100$ and $\delta_{2}(X)=(X+3) / 106$. Figure 3 shows the MSEs of $\delta_{1}$ and $\delta_{2}$, which can be shown to be (show this):

$$
R\left(\theta, \delta_{1}\right):=\operatorname{MSE}\left(\delta_{1}(X), \theta\right)=\frac{9+100 \theta(1-\theta)}{100^{2}}, \quad \text { for } \theta \in[0,1]
$$

and

$$
R\left(\theta, \delta_{2}\right):=\operatorname{MSE}\left(\delta_{2}(X), \theta\right)=\frac{(9-8 \theta)(1+8 \theta)}{106^{2}}, \quad \text { for } \theta \in[0,1]
$$

Looking at the plot, $\delta_{0}$ and $\delta_{2}$ are both better than $\delta_{1}$, but the comparison between $\delta_{0}$ and $\delta_{2}$ is ambiguous. When $\theta$ is near $1 / 2, \delta_{2}$ is the preferable estimator, but if $\theta$ is near 0 or $1, \delta_{0}$ is preferable. If $\theta$ were known, we could choose between $\delta_{0}$ and $\delta_{2}$. However, if $\theta$ were known, there would be no need to estimate its value.

As we have noted before, it is generally not possible to find a universally best estimator.

One way to try to construct optimal estimators is to restrict oneself to a subclass of estimators and try to find the best possible estimator in this subclass. One arrives at subclasses of estimators by constraining them to meet some desirable requirements. One such requirement is that of unbiasedness. Below, we provide a formal definition.

### 4.3 Unbiased estimators

An estimator $T_{n}$ of $g(\theta)$ is said to be unbiased if $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)=g(\theta)$ for all possible values of $\theta$; i.e.,

$$
b\left(T_{n}, g(\theta)\right)=0 \quad \text { for all } \theta \in \Omega
$$

Thus, unbiased estimators, on an average, hit the target, for all parameter values. This seems to be a reasonable constraint to impose on an estimator and indeed produces meaningful estimates in a variety of situations.

Note that for an unbiased estimator $T_{n}$, the MSE under $\theta$ is simply the variance of $T_{n}$ under $\theta$.

In a large class of models, it is possible to find an unbiased estimator of $g(\theta)$ that has the smallest possible variance among all possible unbiased estimators. Such an estimate is called an minimum variance unbiased estimator (MVUE). Here is a formal definition.

MVUE: We call $S_{n}$ an MVUE of $g(\theta)$ if

$$
\text { (i) } \mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(S_{n}\right)=g(\theta) \quad \text { for all } \theta \in \Omega
$$

and (ii) if $T_{n}$ is an unbiased estimate of $g(\theta)$, then $\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(S_{n}\right) \leq \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T_{n}\right)$.
Here are a few examples to illustrate some of the various concepts discussed above.
(a) Consider $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$.

A natural unbiased estimator of $g_{1}(\theta)=\mu$ is $\bar{X}_{n}$, the sample mean. It is also consistent for $\mu$ by the WLLN. It can be shown that this is also the MVUE of $\mu$.

In other words, any other unbiased estimate of $\mu$ will have a larger variance than $\bar{X}_{n}$. Recall that the variance of $\bar{X}_{n}$ is simply $\sigma^{2} / n$.
Consider now, the estimation of $\sigma^{2}$. Two estimates of this that we have considered in the past are

$$
(i) \hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \text { (ii) } s^{2}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2}
$$

Out of these $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ is not unbiased for $\sigma^{2}$ but $s^{2}$ is. In fact $s^{2}$ is the MVUE of $\sigma^{2}$.
(b) Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d from some underlying density function or mass function $f(x, \theta)$. Let $g(\theta)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{1}\right)$.
Then the sample mean $\bar{X}_{n}$ is always an unbiased estimate of $g(\theta)$. Whether it is MVUE or not depends on the underlying structure of the model.
(c) Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $\operatorname{Ber}(\theta)$. It can be shown that $\bar{X}_{n}$ is the MVUE of $\theta$.

Now define $g(\theta)=\theta /(1-\theta)$. This is a quantity of interest because it is precisely the odds in favor of Heads. It can be shown that there is no unbiased estimator of $g(\theta)$ in this model (Why?).

However an intuitively appealing estimate of $g(\theta)$ is $T_{n} \equiv \bar{X}_{n} /\left(1-\bar{X}_{n}\right)$. It is not unbiased for $g(\theta)$; however it does converge in probability to $g(\theta)$.

This example illustrates an important point - unbiased estimators may not always exist. Hence imposing unbiasedness as a constraint may not be meaningful in all situations.
(d) Unbiased estimators are not always better than biased estimators.

Remember, it is the MSE that gauges the performance of the estimator and a biased estimator may actually outperform an unbiased one owing to a significantly smaller variance.

Example 4.3. Consider $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ i.i.d $\operatorname{Uniform}([0, \theta]) ; \theta>0$. Here $\Omega=$ $(0, \infty)$.

A natural estimate of $\theta$ is the maximum of the $X_{i}$ 's, which we denote by $X_{(n)}$.
Another estimate of $\theta$ is obtained by observing that $\bar{X}_{n}$ is an unbiased estimate of $\theta / 2$, the common mean of the $X_{i}$ 's; hence $2 \bar{X}_{n}$ is an unbiased estimate of $\theta$.

Show that $X_{(n)}$ in the sense of MSE outperforms $2 \bar{X}_{n}$ by an order of magnitude.
The best unbiased estimator (MVUE) of $\theta$ is $\left(1+n^{-1}\right) X_{(n)}$.

Solution: We can show that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{MSE}\left(2 \bar{X}_{n}, \theta\right) & =\frac{\theta^{2}}{3 n}=\operatorname{Var}\left(2 \bar{X}_{n}\right) \\
\operatorname{MSE}\left(\left(1+n^{-1}\right) X_{(n)}, \theta\right) & =\frac{\theta^{2}}{n(n+2)}=\operatorname{Var}\left(\left(1+n^{-1}\right) X_{(n)}\right) \\
\operatorname{MSE}\left(X_{(n)}, \theta\right) & =\frac{\theta^{2}}{n(n+2)} \cdot \frac{n^{2}}{(n+1)^{2}}+\frac{\theta^{2}}{(n+1)^{2}},
\end{aligned}
$$

where in the last equality we have two terms - the variance and the squared bias.

### 4.4 Sufficient Statistics

In some problems, there may not be any MLE, or there may be more than one. Even when an MLE is unique, it may not be a suitable estimator (as in the $\operatorname{Unif}(0, \theta)$ example, where the MLE always underestimates the value of $\theta$ ).

In such problems, the search for a good estimator must be extended beyond the methods that have been introduced thus far.

In this section, we shall define the concept of a sufficient statistic, which can be used to simplify the search for a good estimator in many problems.

Suppose that in a specific estimation problem, two statisticians A and B must estimate the value of the parameter $\theta$.

Statistician A can observe the values of the observations $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ in a random sample, and statistician B cannot observe the individual values of $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ but can learn the value of a certain statistic $T=\varphi\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.

In this case, statistician A can choose any function of the observations $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ as an estimator of $\theta$ (including a function of $T$ ). But statistician B can use only a function of $T$. Hence, it follows that A will generally be able to find a better estimator than will B.

In some problems, however, B will be able to do just as well as A. In such a problem, the single function $T=\varphi\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ will in some sense summarize all the information contained in the random sample about $\theta$, and knowledge of the individual values of $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ will be irrelevant in the search for a good estimator of $\theta$.

A statistic $T$ having this property is called a sufficient statistic.

A statistic is sufficient with respect to a statistical model $P_{\theta}$ and its associated unknown parameter $\theta$ if it provides "all" the information on $\theta$; e.g., if "no other statistic that can be calculated from the same sample provides any additional information as to the value of the parameter". This intuition will be rigorized at the end of this subsection.

Definition 13 (Sufficient statistic). Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be a random sample from a distribution indexed by a parameter $\theta \in \Omega$. Let $T$ be a statistic. Suppose that, for every $\theta \in \Omega$ and every possible value $t$ of $T$, the conditional joint distribution of $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ given that $T=t$ (at $\theta$ ) depends only on $t$ but not on $\theta$.

That is, for each $t$, the conditional distribution of $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ given $T=t$ is the same for all $\theta$. Then we say that $T$ is a sufficient statistic for the parameter $\theta$.

So, if $T$ is sufficient, and one observed only $T$ instead of $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$, one could, at least in principle, simulate random variables $\left(X_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, X_{n}^{\prime}\right)$ with the same joint distribution.

In this sense, $T$ is sufficient for obtaining as much information about $\theta$ as one could get from $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.

Example 4.4. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Poisson $(\theta)$, where $\theta>0$. Show that $T=\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$ is sufficient. Let $\boldsymbol{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.

Note that

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x} \mid T(\boldsymbol{X})=t)=\frac{\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x}, T(\boldsymbol{X})=t)}{\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T=t)}
$$

But,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x}, T(\boldsymbol{X})=t)= \begin{cases}0 & T(\boldsymbol{x}) \neq t \\ \mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x}) & T(\boldsymbol{x})=t\end{cases}
$$

As

$$
\mathbb{P}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x})=\frac{e^{-n \theta} \theta^{T(\boldsymbol{x})}}{\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}!}
$$

Also,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T(\boldsymbol{X})=t)=\frac{e^{-n \theta}(n \theta)^{t}}{t!}
$$

Hence,

$$
\frac{\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\boldsymbol{X}=\boldsymbol{x})}{\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T(\boldsymbol{X})=t(\boldsymbol{x}))}=\frac{t!}{\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}!n^{t}},
$$

which does not depend on $\theta$. So $T=\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$ is a sufficient statistic for $\theta$.
Other sufficient statistics are: $T=3.7 \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}, T=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}, X_{4}\right)$, and $T=$ $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$.

We shall now present a simple method for finding a sufficient statistic that can be applied in many problems.

Theorem 4.5 (Factorization criterion). Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from either a continuous distribution or a discrete distribution for which the p.d.f or the p.m.f is $f(x, \theta)$, where the value of $\theta$ is unknown and belongs to a given parameter space $\Omega$.

A statistic $T=r\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is a sufficient statistic for $\theta$ if and only if the joint p.d.f or the joint p.m.f $f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)$ of $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ can be factored as follows for all values of $\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ and all values of $\theta \in \Omega$ :

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)=u(\boldsymbol{x}) \nu(r(\boldsymbol{x}), \theta), \quad \text { where }
$$

- $u$ and $\nu$ are both non-negative,
- the function u may depend on $\boldsymbol{x}$ but does not depend on $\theta$,
- the function $\nu$ will depend on $\theta$ but depends on the observed value $\boldsymbol{x}$ only through the value of the statistic $r(\boldsymbol{x})$.

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Poi}(\theta), \theta>0$. Thus, for every nonnegative integers $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$, the joint p.m.f $f_{n}(\mathbf{x}, \theta)$ of $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is

$$
f_{n}(\mathbf{x}, \theta)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{e^{-\theta} \theta^{x_{i}}}{x_{i}!}=\frac{1}{\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}!} e^{-n \theta} \theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}
$$

Thus, we can take $u(\boldsymbol{x})=1 /\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}!\right), r(\boldsymbol{x})=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}, \nu(t, \theta)=e^{-n \theta} \theta^{t}$. It follows that $T=\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$ is a sufficient statistic for $\theta$.

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \beta), \alpha, \beta>0$, where $\alpha$ is known, and $\beta$ is unknown. The joint p.d.f is

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \beta)=\left\{[\Gamma(\alpha)]^{n}\left(\prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ u(\boldsymbol{x})}}^{n} x_{i}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right\}^{-1} \times\left\{\beta^{n \alpha} \exp (-\beta t)\right\}, \quad \text { where } t=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}
$$

The sufficient statistics is $T_{n}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$.

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \beta), \alpha, \beta>0$, where $\alpha$ is unknown, and $\beta$ is known.

The joint p.d.f in this exercise is the same as that given in the previous exercise. However, since the unknown parameter is now $\alpha$ instead of $\beta$, the appropriate factorization is now

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \alpha)=\left\{\exp \left(-\beta \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)\right\} \times\left\{\frac{\beta^{n \alpha}}{[\Gamma(\alpha)]^{n}} t^{\alpha-1}\right\}, \quad \text { where } t=\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} .
$$

The sufficient statistics is $T_{n}=\prod_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}$.

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Unif}([0, \theta]), \theta>0$ is the unknown parameter. Show that $T=\max \left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right\}$ is the sufficient statistic.

Suppose that $\boldsymbol{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ form a random sample from a distribution for which the p.d.f or p.m.f. is $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$, where the parameter $\theta$ must belong to some parameter space $\Omega$. Let $\boldsymbol{T}$ be a sufficient statistic for $\theta$ in this problem.

We show how to improve upon an estimator that is not a function of a sufficient statistic by using an estimator that is a function of a sufficient statistic. Let $\delta(\boldsymbol{X})$ be and estimator of $g(\theta)$. We define the estimator $\delta_{0}(T)$ by the following conditional expectation:

$$
\delta_{0}(\boldsymbol{T})=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}[\delta(\boldsymbol{X}) \mid \boldsymbol{T}] .
$$

Since $\boldsymbol{T}$ is a sufficient statistic, the conditional expectation of the function $\delta(\boldsymbol{X})$ will be the same for every value of $\theta \in \Omega$. It follows that the conditional expectation above will depend on the value of $\boldsymbol{T}$ but will not actually depend on the value of $\theta$. In other words, the function $\delta_{0}(\boldsymbol{T})$ is indeed an estimator of $g(\theta)$ because it depends only on the observations $\boldsymbol{X}$ and does not depend on the unknown value of $\theta$.

We can now state the following theorem, which was established independently by D. Blackwell and C. R. Rao in the late 1940s.

Theorem 4.6 (Rao-Blackwell theorem). For every value of $\theta \in \Omega$,

$$
\operatorname{MSE}\left(\delta_{0}(\boldsymbol{T}), g(\theta)\right) \leq \operatorname{MSE}(\delta(\boldsymbol{X}), g(\theta))
$$

The above result is proved in Theorem 7.9.1 of the text book (see deGroot and Schervish, Fourth Edition).

## 5 Bayesian paradigm

## Frequentist versus Bayesian statistics:

Frequentist:

- Data are a repeatable random sample - there is a frequency.
- Parameters are fixed.
- Underlying parameters remain constant during this repeatable process.

Bayesian:

- Parameters are unknown and described probabilistically.
- Analysis is done conditioning on the observed data; i.e., data is treated as fixed.


### 5.1 Prior distribution

Definition 14 (Prior distribution). Suppose that one has a statistical model with parameter $\theta$. If one treats $\theta$ as random, then the distribution that one assigns to $\theta$ before observing the data is called its prior distribution.

Thus, now $\theta$ is random and will be denoted by $\Theta$ (note the change of notation).
We will assume that if the prior distribution of $\Theta$ is continuous, then its p.d.f is called the prior p.d.f of $\Theta$.

Example: Let $\Theta$ denote the probability of obtaining a head when a certain coin is tossed.

- Case 1: Suppose that it is known that the coin either is fair or has a head on each side. Then $\Theta$ only takes two values, namely $1 / 2$ and 1 . If the prior probability that the coin is fair is 0.8 , then the prior p.m.f of $\Theta$ is $\xi(1 / 2)=0.8$ and $\xi(1)=0.2$.
- Case 2: Suppose that $\Theta$ can take any value between $(0,1)$ with a prior distribution given by a Beta distribution with parameters $(1,1)$.

Suppose that the observable data $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are modeled as random sample from a distribution indexed by $\theta$. Suppose $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$ denote the p.m.f/p.d.f of a single random variable under the distribution indexed by $\theta$.

When we treat the unknown parameter $\Theta$ as random, then the joint distribution of the observable random variables (i.e., data) indexed by $\theta$ is understood as the conditional distribution of the data given $\Theta=\theta$.

Thus, in general we will have $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n} \mid \Theta=\theta$ are i.i.d with p.d.f/p.m.f $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$, and that $\Theta \sim \xi$, i.e.,

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta)=f\left(x_{1} \mid \theta\right) \ldots f\left(x_{n} \mid \theta\right)
$$

where $f_{n}$ is the joint conditional distribution of $\boldsymbol{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ given $\Theta=\theta$.

### 5.2 Posterior distribution

Definition 15 (Posterior distribution). Consider a statistical inference problem with parameter $\theta$ and random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ to be observed. The conditional distribution of $\Theta$ given $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ is called the posterior distribution of $\theta$.

The conditional p.m.f/p.d.f of $\Theta$ given $X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n}$ is called the posterior p.m.f/p.d.f of $\theta$ and is usually denoted by $\xi\left(\cdot \mid x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$.

Theorem 5.1. Suppose that the $n$ random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from a distribution for which the p.d.f/p.m.f is $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$. Suppose also that the value of the parameter $\theta$ is unknown and the prior p.d.f/p.m.f of $\theta$ is $\xi(\cdot)$. Then the posterior p.d.f/p.m.f of $\theta$ is

$$
\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x})=\frac{f\left(x_{1} \mid \theta\right) \cdots f\left(x_{n} \mid \theta\right) \xi(\theta)}{g_{n}(\boldsymbol{x})}, \quad \text { for } \theta \in \Omega
$$

where $g_{n}$ is the marginal joint p.d.f/p.m.f of $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$.

Example 5.2 (Sampling from a Bernoulli distribution). Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from the Bernoulli distribution with mean $\theta>0$, where $0<$ $\theta<1$ is unknown. Suppose that the prior distribution of $\Theta$ is $\operatorname{Beta}(\alpha, \beta)$, where $\alpha, \beta>0$.

Then the posterior distribution of $\Theta$ given $X_{i}=x_{i}$, for $i=1, \ldots, n$, is $\operatorname{Beta}(\alpha+$ $\left.\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}, \beta+n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)$.

Proof. The joint p.m.f of the data is

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta)=f\left(x_{1} \mid \theta\right) \cdots f\left(x_{n} \mid \theta\right)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \theta^{x_{i}}(1-\theta)^{1-x_{i}}=\theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}(1-\theta)^{n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}
$$

Therefore the posterior density of $\Theta \mid X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x}) & \propto \theta^{\alpha-1}(1-\theta)^{\beta-1} \cdot \theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}(1-\theta)^{n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}} \\
& =\theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}+\alpha-1}(1-\theta)^{\beta+n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}-1},
\end{aligned}
$$

for $\theta \in(0,1)$. Thus, $\Theta \mid X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n} \sim \operatorname{Beta}\left(\alpha+\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}, \beta+n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)$.

Example 5.3 (Sampling from a Poisson distribution). Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from the Poisson distribution with mean $\theta>0$, where $\theta$ is unknown. Suppose that the prior distribution of $\Theta$ is $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \beta)$, where $\alpha, \beta>0$.

Then the posterior distribution of $\Theta$ given $X_{i}=x_{i}$, for $i=1, \ldots, n$, is $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha+$ $\left.\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}, \beta+n\right)$.

Definition: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$, be conditionally i.i.d given $\Theta=\theta$ with common p.m.f/p.d.f $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$, where $\theta \in \Omega$.

Let $\Psi$ be a family of possible distributions over the parameter space $\Omega$. Suppose that no matter which prior distribution $\xi$ we choose from $\Psi$, no matter how many observations $\boldsymbol{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ we observe, and no matter what are their observed values $\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, the posterior distribution $\xi(\cdot \mid \boldsymbol{x})$ is a member of $\Psi$.

Then $\Psi$ is called a conjugate family of prior distributions for samples from the distributions $f(\cdot \mid \theta)$.

Example 5.4 (Sampling from an Exponential distribution). Suppose that the distribution of the lifetime of fluorescent tubes of a certain type is the exponential distribution with parameter $\theta$. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ is a random sample of lamps of this type.

Also suppose that $\Theta \sim \operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \beta)$, for known $\alpha, \beta$.
Then

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \theta e^{-\theta x_{i}}=\theta^{n} e^{-\theta \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}
$$

Then the posterior distribution of $\Theta$ given the data is

$$
\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x}) \propto \theta^{n} e^{-\theta \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}} \cdot \theta^{\alpha-1} e^{-\beta \theta}=\theta^{n+\alpha-1} e^{-\left(\beta+\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right) \theta} .
$$

Therefore, $\Theta \mid \boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\boldsymbol{x} \sim \operatorname{Gamma}\left(\alpha+n, \beta+\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)$.

### 5.3 Bayes Estimators

An estimator of a parameter is some function of the data that we hope is close to the parameter, i.e., $\hat{\theta} \approx \theta$.

Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be data whose joint distribution is indexed by a parameter $\theta \in \Omega$.
Let $\delta\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ be an estimator of $\theta$.
Definition: A loss function is a real-valued function of two variables, $L(\theta, a)$, where $\theta \in \Omega$ and $a \in \mathbb{R}$.

The interpretation is that the statistician loses $L(\theta, a)$ if the parameter equals $\theta$ and the estimate equals $a$.

Example: (Squared error loss) $L(\theta, a)=(\theta-a)^{2}$.
(Absolute error loss) $L(\theta, a)=|\theta-a|$.
Suppose that $\xi(\cdot)$ is a prior p.d.f/p.m.f of $\theta \in \Omega$. Consider the problem of estimating $\theta$ without being able to observe the data. If the statistician chooses a particular estimate $a$, then her expected loss will be

$$
\mathbb{E}[L(\theta, a)]=\int_{\Omega} L(\theta, a) \xi(\theta) d \theta
$$

It is sensible that the statistician wishes to choose an estimate $a$ for which the expected loss is minimum.

Definition: Suppose now that the statistician can observe the value $\boldsymbol{x}$ of a the data $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ before estimating $\theta$, and let $\xi(\cdot \mid \boldsymbol{x})$ denote the posterior p.d.f of $\theta \in \Omega$. For each estimate $a$ that the statistician might use, her expected loss in this case will be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{E}[L(\theta, a) \mid \boldsymbol{x}]=\int_{\Omega} L(\theta, a) \xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x}) d \theta \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence, the statistician should now choose an estimate $a$ for which the above expectation is minimum.

For each possible value $\boldsymbol{x}$ of $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$, let $\delta^{*}(\boldsymbol{x})$ denote a value of the estimate $a$ for which the expected loss (2) is minimum. Then the function $\delta^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ is called the Bayes estimator of $\theta$.

Once $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\boldsymbol{x}$ is observed, $\delta^{*}(\boldsymbol{x})$ is called the Bayes estimate of $\theta$.
Thus, a Bayes estimator is an estimator that is chosen to minimize the posterior mean of some measure of how far the estimator is from the parameter.

Corollary 5.5. Let $\theta \in \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}$. Suppose that the squared error loss function is used and the posterior mean of $\Theta$, i.e., $\mathbb{E}\left(\Theta \mid \boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$, is finite. Then the Bayes estimator of $\theta$ is

$$
\delta^{*}\left(X_{n}\right)=\mathbb{E}\left(\Theta \mid \boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right) .
$$

Example 1: (Bernoulli distribution with Beta prior)
Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from the Bernoulli distribution with mean $\theta>0$, where $0<\theta<1$ is unknown. Suppose that the prior distribution of $\Theta$ is $\operatorname{Beta}(\alpha, \beta)$, where $\alpha, \beta>0$.

Recall that $\Theta \mid X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n} \sim \operatorname{Beta}\left(\alpha+\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}, \beta+n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)$. Thus,

$$
\delta^{*}(\boldsymbol{X})=\frac{\alpha+\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}{\alpha+\beta+n}
$$

### 5.4 Sampling from a normal distribution

Theorem 5.6. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from $N\left(\theta, \sigma^{2}\right)$, where $\theta$ is unknown and the value of the variance $\sigma^{2}>0$ is known. Suppose that $\Theta \sim$ $N\left(\mu_{0}, v_{0}^{2}\right)$. Then

$$
\Theta \mid X_{1}=x_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=x_{n} \sim N\left(\mu_{1}, v_{1}^{2}\right)
$$

where

$$
\mu_{1}=\frac{\sigma^{2} \mu_{0}+n v_{0}^{2} \bar{x}_{n}}{\sigma^{2}+n v_{0}^{2}} \quad \text { and } \quad v_{1}^{2}=\frac{\sigma^{2} v_{0}^{2}}{\sigma^{2}+n v_{0}^{2}} .
$$

Proof. The joint density has the form

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta) \propto \exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\theta\right)^{2}\right]
$$

The method of completing the squares tells us that

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\theta\right)^{2}=n\left(\theta-\bar{x}_{n}\right)^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}_{n}\right)^{2}
$$

Thus, by omitting the factor that involves $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$ but does depend on $\theta$, we may rewrite $f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta)$ as

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \theta) \propto \exp \left[-\frac{n}{2 \sigma^{2}}\left(\theta-\bar{x}_{n}\right)^{2}\right] .
$$

Since the prior density has the form

$$
\xi(\theta) \propto \exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 v_{0}^{2}}\left(\theta-\mu_{0}\right)^{2}\right],
$$

it follows that the posterior p.d.f $\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x})$ satisfies

$$
\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x}) \propto \exp \left[-\frac{n}{2 \sigma^{2}}\left(\theta-\bar{x}_{n}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{2 v_{0}^{2}}\left(\theta-\mu_{0}\right)^{2}\right] .
$$

Completing the squares again establishes the following identity:

$$
\frac{n}{\sigma^{2}}\left(\theta-\bar{x}_{n}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{v_{0}^{2}}\left(\theta-\mu_{0}\right)^{2}=\frac{1}{v_{1}^{2}}\left(\theta-\mu_{1}\right)^{2}+\frac{n}{\sigma^{2}+n v_{0}^{2}}\left(\bar{x}_{n}-\mu_{0}\right)^{2} .
$$

The last term on the right side does not involve on $\theta$. Thus,

$$
\xi(\theta \mid \boldsymbol{x}) \propto \exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 v_{1}^{2}}\left(\theta-\mu_{1}\right)^{2}\right] .
$$

Thus,

$$
\delta^{*}(\boldsymbol{X})=\frac{\sigma^{2} \mu_{0}+n v_{0}^{2} \bar{X}_{n}}{\sigma^{2}+n v_{0}^{2}}
$$

Corollary 5.7. Let $\theta \in \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}$. Suppose that the absolute error loss function is used. Then the Bayes estimator of $\theta \delta^{*}\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)$ equals the median of the posterior distribution of $\Theta$.

## 6 The sampling distribution of a statistic

A statistic is a function of the data, and hence is itself a random variable with a distribution.

This distribution is called its sampling distribution. It tells us what values the statistic is likely to assume and how likely is it to take these values.

Formally, suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d with p.d.f/p.m.f $f_{\theta}(\cdot)$, where $\theta \in \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^{k}$.
Let $T$ be a statistic, i.e., suppose that $T=\varphi\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$. Assume that $T \sim F_{\theta}$, where $F_{\theta}$ is the c.d.f of $T$ (possibly dependent on $\theta$ ).

The distribution of $T$ (with $\theta$ fixed) is called the sampling distribution of $T$. Thus, the sampling distribution of $T$ has c.d.f $F_{\theta}$.

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$. Then we know that

$$
\bar{X}_{n} \sim N\left(\mu, \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n}\right) .
$$

### 6.1 The gamma and the $\chi^{2}$ distributions

### 6.1.1 The gamma distribution

The gamma function is a real-valued non-negative function defined on $(0, \infty)$ in the following manner

$$
\Gamma(\alpha)=\int_{0}^{\infty} x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x} d x, \alpha>0
$$

The Gamma function enjoys some nice properties. Two of these are listed below:

$$
\text { (a) } \Gamma(\alpha+1)=\alpha \Gamma(\alpha), \quad(b) \Gamma(n)=(n-1)!(n \text { integer })
$$

Property (b) is an easy consequence of Property (a). Start off with $\Gamma(n)$ and use Property (a) recursively along with the fact that $\Gamma(1)=1$ (why?). Another important fact is that $\Gamma(1 / 2)=\sqrt{\pi}$ (Prove this at home!).

The gamma distribution with parameters $\alpha>0, \lambda>0$ (denoted by $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \lambda))$ is defined through the following density function:

$$
f(x \mid \alpha, \lambda)=\frac{\lambda^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} e^{-\lambda x} x^{\alpha-1} I_{(0, \infty)}(x)
$$

The first parameter $\alpha$ is called the shape parameter and the second parameter $\lambda$ is called the scale parameter.

For fixed $\lambda$ the shape parameter regulates the shape of the gamma density.
Here is a simple exercise that justifies the term "scale parameter" for $\lambda$.
Exercise: Let $X$ be a random variable following $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \lambda)$. Then show that $Y=\lambda X$ (thus $X$ is $Y$ scaled by $\lambda$ ) follows the $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, 1)$ distribution. What is the distribution of $c X$ for some arbitrary positive constant $c$ ? You can use the change of variable theorem in one-dimension to work this out.

## Reproductive Property of the gamma distribution:

Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be independent random variables with $X_{i} \sim \operatorname{Gamma}\left(\alpha_{i}, \lambda\right)$, for $i=1, \ldots, n$. Then,

$$
S_{n}:=X_{1}+X_{2}+\ldots+X_{n} \sim \operatorname{Gamma}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_{i}, \lambda\right)
$$

If $X$ follows the $\operatorname{Gamma}(\alpha, \lambda)$ distribution, the mean and variance of $X$ can be explicitly expressed in terms of the parameters:

$$
\mathbb{E}(X)=\frac{\alpha}{\lambda} \text { and } \operatorname{Var}(X)=\frac{\alpha}{\lambda^{2}} .
$$

We outline the computation of a general moment $\mathbb{E}\left(X^{k}\right)$, where $k$ is a positive integer. We have,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{E}\left(X^{k}\right) & =\int_{0}^{\infty} x^{k} \frac{\lambda^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} e^{-\lambda x} x^{\alpha-1} d x \\
& =\frac{\lambda^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\lambda x} x^{k+\alpha-1} d x \\
& =\frac{\lambda^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \frac{\Gamma(\alpha+k)}{\lambda^{\alpha+k}} \\
& =\frac{(\alpha+k-1) \cdots(\alpha) \Gamma(\alpha)}{\lambda^{k} \Gamma(\alpha)} \\
& =\frac{\prod_{i=1}^{k}(\alpha+i-1)}{\lambda^{k}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The formulae for the mean and the variance should follow directly from the above computation. Note that in the above derivation, we have used the fact that

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\lambda x} x^{k+\alpha-1} d x=\frac{\Gamma(\alpha+k)}{\lambda^{\alpha+k}}
$$

This is an immediate consequence of the fact that the gamma density with parameters $(\alpha+k, \lambda)$ integrates to 1 .

Exercise: Here is an exercise that should follow from the discussion above. Let $S_{n} \sim$ $\operatorname{Gamma}(n, \lambda)$, where $\lambda>0$. Show that for large $n$, the distribution of $S_{n}$ is well approximated by a normal distribution (with parameters that you need to identify).

### 6.1.2 The Chi-squared distribution

We now introduce an important family of distributions, called the chi-squared family. To do so, we first define the chi-squared distribution with 1 degree of freedom (for brevity, we call it "chi-squared one" and write it as $\chi_{1}^{2}$ ).

The $\chi_{1}^{2}$ distribution: Let $Z \sim N(0,1)$. Then the distribution of $W:=Z^{2}$ is called the $\chi_{1}^{2}$ distribution, and $W$ itself is called a $\chi_{1}^{2}$ random variable.

Exercise: Show that $W$ follows a $\operatorname{Gamma}(1 / 2,1 / 2)$ distribution. (You can do this by working out the density function of $W$ from that of $Z$ ).

For any integer $d>0$ we can now define the $\chi_{d}^{2}$ distribution (chi-squared $d$ distribution, or equivalently, the chi-squared distribution with $d$ degrees of freedom).

The $\chi_{d}^{2}$ distribution: Let $Z_{1}, Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{d}$ be i.i.d $N(0,1)$ random variables. Then the distribution of

$$
W_{d}:=Z_{1}^{2}+Z_{2}^{2}+\ldots+Z_{d}^{2}
$$

is called the $\chi_{d}^{2}$ distribution and $W_{d}$ itself is called a $\chi_{d}^{2}$ random variable.
Exercise: Using the reproductive property of the Gamma distribution, show that $W_{d} \sim \operatorname{Gamma}(d / 2,1 / 2)$.

Thus, it follows that the sum of $k$ i.i.d $\chi_{1}^{2}$ random variables is a $\chi_{k}^{2}$ random variable.
Exercise: Let $Z_{1}, Z_{2}, Z_{3}$ be i.i.d $N(0,1)$ random variables. Consider the vector $\left(Z_{1}, Z_{2}, Z_{3}\right)$ as a random point in 3-dimensional space. Let $R$ be the length of the radius vector connecting this point to the origin. Find the density functions of (a) $R$ and (b) $R^{2}$.

Theorem 6.1. If $X \sim \chi_{m}^{2}$ then $\mathbb{E}(X)=m$ and $\operatorname{Var}(X)=2 m$.
Theorem 6.2. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}$ are independent and $X_{i} \sim \chi_{m_{i}}^{2}$ then the sum

$$
X_{1}+\cdots+X_{k} \sim \chi_{\sum_{i=1}^{k} m_{i}}^{2} .
$$

### 6.2 Sampling from a normal population

Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, where $\mu \in \mathbb{R}, \sigma>0$ are unknown.
You could think of the $X_{i}$ 's for example as a set of randomly sampled SAT scores from the entire population of SAT scores. Then $\mu$ is the average SAT score of the entire population and $\sigma^{2}$ is the variance of SAT scores in the entire population. We are interested in estimating $\mu$ and $\sigma^{2}$ based on the data. Note that SAT scores are actually discrete in nature - $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ provides a good approximation to the actual population distribution. In other words, $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ is the model that we use for the SAT scores.

In statistics as in any other science, models are meant to provide insightful approximations to the true underlying nature of reality.

Natural estimates of the mean and the variance are given by:

$$
\hat{\mu}=\bar{X}_{n}=\frac{X_{1}+X_{2}+\ldots+X_{n}}{n} \text { and } \hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2} .
$$

These are the sample mean and sample variance (biased version). In what follows, we will use a slightly different estimator of $\sigma^{2}$ than the one proposed above. We will use

$$
s^{2}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2} .
$$

One reason for using $s^{2}$ is that it has a natural interpretation as the multiple of a $\chi^{2}$ random variable; further $s^{2}$ is an unbiased estimator of $\sigma^{2}$ whereas $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ is not, i.e.,

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(s^{2}\right)=\sigma^{2} \text { but } \mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\sigma}^{2}\right) \neq \sigma^{2}
$$

For the sake of notational simplicity we will let $S^{2}$ denote the residual sum of squares about the mean, i.e., $S^{2}:=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$.

Here is an interesting (and fairly profound) proposition.
Proposition 6.3. Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be an i.i.d sample from some distribution $F$ with mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$. Then $F$ is the $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ distribution if and only if for all $n, \bar{X}_{n}$ and $s^{2}$ are independent random variables. Moreover, when $F$ is $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, then

$$
\bar{X}_{n} \sim N\left(\mu, \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n}\right), \quad \text { and } \quad s^{2} \sim \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n-1} \chi_{n-1}^{2}
$$

The "if" part is the profound part. It says that the independence of the natural estimates of the mean and the variance for any sample size forces the underlying distribution to be normal.

We will sketch a proof of the only if part, i.e., we will assume that $F$ is $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ and show that $\bar{X}_{n}$ and $s^{2}$ are independent.

Proof. To this end, define new random variables $Y_{1}, Y_{2}, \ldots, Y_{n}$ where for each $i$,

$$
Y_{i}=\left(X_{i}-\mu\right) / \sigma
$$

These are the standardized versions of the $X_{i}$ 's and are i.i.d. $N(0,1)$ random variables. Now, note that:

$$
\bar{X}=\bar{Y} \sigma+\mu \text { and } s^{2}=\frac{\sigma^{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}}{n-1} .
$$

From the above display, we see that it suffices to show the independence of $\bar{Y}$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}$.

The way this proceeds is outlined below: Let $\boldsymbol{Y}$ denote the $n \times 1$ column vector $\left(Y_{1}, Y_{2}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)^{\top}$ and let $P$ be an $n \times n$ orthogonal matrix with the first row of $P$ (which has length $n$ ) being $(1 / \sqrt{n}, 1 / \sqrt{n}, \ldots, 1 / \sqrt{n})$.

Recall that an orthogonal matrix satisfies

$$
P^{\top} P=P P^{\top}=I
$$

where $I$ is the identity matrix.
Using standard linear algebra techniques it can be shown that such a $P$ can always be constructed. Now define a new random vector

$$
W=P \boldsymbol{Y}
$$

Then it can be established that the random vector $\boldsymbol{W}=\left(W_{1}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{n}\right)^{\top}$ has the same distribution as $\left(Y_{1}, Y_{2}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)^{\top}$; in other words, $W_{1}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{n}$ are i.i.d $N(0,1)$ random variables.

Theorem 6.4. Suppose that $Z_{1}, \ldots, Z_{n}$ are i.i.d $N(0,1)$. Suppose that $A$ is an orthogonal matrix and

$$
\boldsymbol{V}=A \boldsymbol{Z}
$$

Then the random variables $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{n}$ are i.i.d $N(0,1)$. Also, $\sum_{i=1}^{n} V_{i}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} Z_{i}^{2}$.

Note that

$$
\boldsymbol{W}^{\top} \boldsymbol{W}=(P \boldsymbol{Y})^{\top} P \boldsymbol{Y}=\boldsymbol{Y}^{\top} P^{\top} P \boldsymbol{Y}=\boldsymbol{Y}^{\top} \boldsymbol{Y}
$$

by the orthogonality of $P$; in other words, $\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_{i}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i}^{2}$. Also,

$$
W_{1}=Y_{1} / \sqrt{n}+Y_{2} / \sqrt{n}+\ldots+Y_{n} / \sqrt{n}=\sqrt{n} \bar{Y} .
$$

Note that $W_{1}$ is independent of $W_{2}^{2}+W_{3}^{2}+\ldots+W_{n}^{2}$. But

$$
\sum_{i=2}^{n} W_{i}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_{i}^{2}-W_{1}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i}^{2}-n \bar{Y}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}
$$

It therefore follows that $\sqrt{n} \bar{Y}$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}$ are independent, which implies that $\bar{Y}$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}$ are independent.

Note that $\bar{Y} \sim N(0,1 / n)$. Deduce that $\bar{X}$ follows $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} / n\right)$. Since $\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}=$ $W_{2}^{2}+W_{3}^{2}+\ldots+W_{n}^{2}$, it follows that

$$
\frac{S^{2}}{\sigma^{2}}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2} \sim \chi_{n-1}^{2}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
s^{2}=\frac{S^{2}}{n-1} \sim \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n-1} \chi_{n-1}^{2} . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the case $n=2$, it is easy to check the details of the transformation leading from $\boldsymbol{Y}$ to $\boldsymbol{W}$. Set $\boldsymbol{W}=P \boldsymbol{Y}$ with

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Thus $W_{1}=\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}\right) / \sqrt{2}$ and $W_{2}=\left(Y_{1}-Y_{2}\right) / \sqrt{2}$.
Exercise: Use the change of variable theorem to deduce that $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$ are i.i.d $N(0,1)$.

Proof of Theorem 6.4: The joint p.d.f of $\boldsymbol{Z}=\left(Z_{1}, \ldots Z_{n}\right)$ is

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{z})=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} z_{i}^{2}\right), \quad \text { for } \boldsymbol{z} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

Note that as $\boldsymbol{Z} \mapsto A \boldsymbol{Z}$ is a linear transformation. The joint p.d.f of $\boldsymbol{V}=A \boldsymbol{Z}$ is

$$
g_{n}(\boldsymbol{v})=\frac{1}{|\operatorname{det} A|} f_{n}\left(A^{-1} \boldsymbol{v}\right), \quad \text { for } \boldsymbol{v} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

Let $\boldsymbol{z}=A^{-1} \boldsymbol{v}$. Since $A$ is orthogonal, $|\operatorname{det} A|=1$ and $\boldsymbol{v}^{\top} \boldsymbol{v}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} v_{i}^{2}=\boldsymbol{z}^{\top} \boldsymbol{z}=$ $\sum_{i=1}^{n} z_{i}^{2}$. So,

$$
g_{n}(\boldsymbol{v})=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} v_{i}^{2}\right), \quad \text { for } \boldsymbol{v} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

Thus, $\boldsymbol{V}$ has the same joint p.d.f as $\boldsymbol{Z}$.

### 6.3 The $t$-distribution

Definition: Let $Z \sim N(0,1)$ and let $V \sim \chi_{n}^{2}$, independent of each other. Then,

$$
T=\frac{Z}{\sqrt{V / n}}
$$

is said to follow the $t$-distribution on $n$ degrees of freedom. We write $T \sim t_{n}$.
The density of the $t$-distribution is derived in the text book (see Chapter 8.4). With a little bit of patience, you can also work it out, using the change of variable theorem appropriately (I won't go into the computational details here).

Exercise: Let $X$ be a random variable that is distributed symmetrically about 0 , i.e., $X$ and $-X$ have the same distribution function (and hence the same density function). If $f$ denotes the density, show that it is an even function, i.e. $f(x)=f(-x)$ for all $x$.

Conversely, if the random variable $X$ has a density function $f$ that is even, then it is symmetrically distributed about 0 , i.e $X={ }_{d}-X$.

Here are some important facts about the $t$-distribution. Let $T \sim t_{n}$.
(a) $T$ and $-T$ have the same distribution. Thus, the distribution of $T$ is symmetric about 0 and it has an even density function.
From definition,

$$
-T=\frac{-Z}{\sqrt{V / n}}=\frac{\tilde{Z}}{\sqrt{V / n}}
$$

where $\tilde{Z} \equiv-Z$ follows $N(0,1)$, and is independent of $V$ where $V$ follows $\chi_{n}^{2}$. Thus, by definition, $-T$ also follows the $t$-distribution on $n$ degrees of freedom.
(b) As $n \rightarrow \infty$, the $t_{n}$ distribution converges to the $N(0,1)$ distribution; hence the quantiles of the $t$-distribution are well approximated by the quantiles of the normal distribution.
This follows from the law of large numbers. Consider the term $V / n$ in the denominator of $T$ for large $n$. As $V$ follows $\chi_{n}^{2}$ it has the same distribution as $K_{1}+K_{2}+\ldots+K_{n}$ where $K_{i}$ 's are i.i.d $\chi_{1}^{2}$ random variables. But by the WLLN we know that

$$
\frac{K_{1}+K_{2}+\ldots+K_{n}}{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{P}} \mathbb{E}\left(K_{1}\right)=1 \quad(\text { check }!) .
$$

Thus $V / n$ converges in probability to 1 ; hence the denominator in $T$ converges in probability to 1 and $T$ consequently, converges in distribution to $Z$, where $Z$ is $N(0,1)$.

Theorem 6.5. Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from the normal distribution with mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$. Let $\bar{X}_{n}$ denote the sample mean, and define $s^{2}=\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$. Then

$$
\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\mu\right)}{s} \sim t_{n-1} .
$$

## 7 Confidence intervals

Confidence intervals (CIs) provide a method of quantifying uncertainty to an estimator $\hat{\theta}$ when we wish to estimate an unknown parameter $\theta$.

We want to find an interval $(A, B)$ that we think has high probability of containing $\theta$.

Definition: Suppose that $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is a random sample from a distribution $P_{\theta}, \theta \in \Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^{k}$ (that depends on a parameter $\theta$ ).

Suppose that we want to estimate $g(\theta)$, a real-valued function of $\theta$.
Let $A \leq B$ be two statistics that have the property that for all values of $\theta$,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(A \leq g(\theta) \leq B) \geq 1-\alpha
$$

where $\alpha \in(0,1)$.
Then the random interval $(A, B)$ is called a confidence interval for $g(\theta)$ with level (coefficient) $(1-\alpha)$.

If the inequality " $\geq 1-\alpha$ " is an equality for all $\theta$, the the CI is called exact.

Example 1: Find a level $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $\mu$ from data $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ which are i.i.d. $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where $\sigma$ is known. Here $\theta=\mu$ and $g(\theta)=\mu$.

Step 1: We want to construct $\Psi\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}, \mu\right)$ such that the distribution of this object is known to us.

How do we proceed here?
The usual way is to find some decent estimator of $\mu$ and combine it along with $\mu$ in some way to get a "pivot", i.e., a random variable whose distribution does not depend on $\theta$.

The most intuitive estimator of $\mu$ here is the sample mean $\bar{X}_{n}$. We know that

$$
\bar{X}_{n} \sim N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} / n\right)
$$

The standardized version of the sample mean follows $N(0,1)$ and can therefore act as a pivot. In other words, construct,

$$
\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \mu\right)=\frac{\bar{X}-\mu}{\sigma / \sqrt{n}}=\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma} \sim N(0,1)
$$

for every value of $\theta$.
With $z_{\beta}$ denoting the upper $\beta$-th quantile of $N(0,1)$ (i.e., $\mathbb{P}\left(Z>z_{\beta}\right)=\beta$ where $Z$ follows $N(0,1)$ ) we can write:

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma} \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right)=1-\alpha
$$

From the above display we can find limits for $\mu$ such that the above inequalities are simultaneously satisfied. On doing the algebra, we get:

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(\bar{X}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right)=1-\alpha .
$$

Thus our level $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $\mu$ is given by

$$
\left[\bar{X}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \bar{X}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right] .
$$

Often a standard method of constructing CIs is the following method of pivots which we describe below.
(1) Construct a function $\Psi$ using the data $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ and $g(\theta)$, say $\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, g(\theta)\right)$, such that the distribution of this random variable under parameter value $\theta$ does not depend on $\theta$ and is known.
Such a $\Psi$ is called a pivot.
(2) Let $G$ denote the distribution function of the pivot. The idea now is to get a range of plausible values of the pivot. The level of confidence $1-\alpha$ is to be used to get the appropriate range.
This can be done in a variety of ways but the following is standard. Denote by $q(G ; \beta)$ the $\beta$ 'th quantile of $G$. Thus,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left[\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, g(\theta)\right) \leq q(G ; \beta)\right]=\beta .
$$

(3) Choose $0 \leq \beta_{1}, \beta_{2} \leq \alpha$ such that $\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}=\alpha$. Then,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left[q\left(G ; \beta_{1}\right) \leq \Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, g(\theta)\right) \leq q\left(G ; 1-\beta_{2}\right)\right]=1-\beta_{2}-\beta_{1}=1-\alpha
$$

(4) Vary $\theta$ across its domain and choose your level $1-\alpha$ confidence interval (set) as the set of all $g(\theta)$ such that the two inequalities in the above display are simultaneously satisfied.

Example 2: The data are the same as in Example 1 but now $\sigma^{2}$ is no longer known. Thus, the parameter of unknowns $\theta=\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ and we are interested in finding a CI for $g(\theta)=\mu$.

Clearly, setting

$$
\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \mu\right)=\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma}
$$

will not work smoothly here. This certainly has a known $(N(0,1))$ distribution but involves the nuisance parameter $\sigma$ making it difficult get a CI for $\mu$ directly.

However, one can replace $\sigma$ by $s$, where $s^{2}$ is the natural estimate of $\sigma^{2}$ introduced before. So, set:

$$
\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \mu\right)=\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{s}
$$

This only depends on the data and $g(\theta)=\mu$. We claim that this is indeed a pivot.
To see this write

$$
\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{s}=\frac{\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma}}{\sqrt{s^{2} / \sigma^{2}}}
$$

The numerator on the extreme right of the above display follows $N(0,1)$ and the denominator is independent of the numerator and is the square root of a $\chi_{n-1}^{2}$ random variable over its degrees of freedom (from display (3)).

It follows from definition that $\Psi\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \mu\right) \sim t_{n-1}$ distribution.
Thus, $G$ here is the $t_{n-1}$ distribution and we can choose the quantiles to be $q\left(t_{n-1} ; \alpha / 2\right)$ and $q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right)$. By symmetry of the $t_{n-1}$ distribution about 0 , we have, $q\left(t_{n-1} ; \alpha / 2\right)=-q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right)$. It follows that,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu, \sigma^{2}}\left[-q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right) \leq \frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{s} \leq q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right)\right]=1-\alpha
$$

As with Example 1, direct algebraic manipulations show that this is the same as the statement:

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu, \sigma^{2}}\left[\bar{X}-\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right) \leq \mu \leq \bar{X}+\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} q\left(t_{n-1} ; 1-\alpha / 2\right)\right]=1-\alpha
$$

This gives a level $1-\alpha$ confidence set for $\mu$.

Food for thought: In each of the above examples there are innumerable ways of decomposing $\alpha$ as $\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}$. It turns out that when $\alpha$ is split equally the level $1-\alpha$ CIs obtained in Examples 1 and 2 are the shortest.

What are desirable properties of confidence sets? On one hand, we require high levels of confidence; in other words, we would like $\alpha$ to be as small as possible.

On the other hand we would like our CIs to be shortest possible.
Unfortunately, we cannot simultaneously make the confidence levels of our CIs go up and the lengths of our CIs go down.

In Example 1, the length of the level $(1-\alpha) \mathrm{CI}$ is

$$
2 \sigma \frac{z_{\alpha / 2}}{\sqrt{n}}
$$

As we reduce $\alpha$ (for higher confidence), $z_{\alpha / 2}$ increases, making the CI wider.
However, we can reduce the length of our CI for a fixed $\alpha$ by increasing the sample size.

If my sample size is 4 times yours, I will end up with a CI which has the same level as yours but has half the length of your CI.

Can we hope to get absolute confidence, i.e. $\alpha=0$ ? That is too much of an ask. When $\alpha=0, z_{\alpha / 2}=\infty$ and the CIs for $\mu$ are infinitely large. The same can be verified for Example 2.

Asymptotic pivots using the central limit theorem: The CLT allows us to construct an approximate pivot for large sample sizes for estimating the population mean $\mu$ for any underlying distribution $F$.

Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d observations from some common distribution $F$ and let

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=\mu \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}\right)=\sigma^{2}
$$

We are interested in constructing an approximate level $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $\mu$. By the CLT we have $\bar{X} \sim_{a p p x} N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} / n\right)$ for large $n$; in other words,

$$
\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma} \sim_{a p p x} N(0,1) .
$$

If $\sigma$ is known the above quantity is an approximate pivot and following Example 1, we can therefore write,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma} \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right) \approx 1-\alpha
$$

As before, this translates to

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(\bar{X}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right) \approx 1-\alpha .
$$

This gives an approximate level $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $\mu$ when $\sigma$ is known.
The approximation will improve as the sample size $n$ increases.
Note that the true coverage of the above CI may be different from $1-\alpha$ and can depend heavily on the nature of $F$ and the sample size $n$.

Realistically however $\sigma$ is unknown and is replaced by $s$. Since we are dealing with large sample sizes, $s$ is with very high probability close to $\sigma$ and the interval

$$
\left(\bar{X}-\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \bar{X}+\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right),
$$

still remains an approximate level $(1-\alpha)$ CI.

Exercise: Suppose $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Bernoulli $(\theta)$. The sample size $n$ is large.
Thus

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta(1-\theta)
$$

We want to find a level $(1-\alpha)$ CI (approximate) for $\theta$.
Note that both mean and variance are unknown.
Show that if $\hat{\theta}$ is natural estimate of $\theta$ obtained by computing the sample proportion of 1 's, then

$$
\left[\hat{\theta}-\sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}(1-\hat{\theta})}{n-1}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \hat{\theta}+\sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}(1-\hat{\theta})}{n-1}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right]
$$

is an approximate level $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $\theta$.

See http://www.rossmanchance.com/applets/ConfSim.html and http://www.ruf.rice.edu/~lane/stat_sim/conf_interval/ for illustrations of confidence intervals.

Interpretation of confidence intervals: Let $(A, B)$ be a coefficient $\gamma$ confidence interval for a parameter $\theta$. Let $(a, b)$ be the observed value of the interval.

It is NOT correct to say that " $\theta$ lies in the interval $(a, b)$ with probability $\gamma$ ".

It is true that " $\theta$ will lie in the random intervals having endpoints $A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and $B\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ with probability $\gamma$ ".

After observing the specific values $A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=a$ and $B\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=b$, it is not possible to assign a probability to the event that $\theta$ lies in the specific interval $(a, b)$ without regarding $\theta$ as a random variable.

We usually say that there is confidence $\gamma$ that $\theta$ lies in the interval $(a, b)$.

## 8 The (Cramer-Rao) Information Inequality

We saw in the last lecture that for a variety of different models one could differentiate the $\log$-likelihood function with respect to the parameter $\theta$ and set this equal to 0 to obtain the MLE of $\theta$.

In these examples, the log-likelihood as a function of $\theta$ is strictly concave (looks like an inverted bowl) and hence solving for the stationary point gives us the unique maximizer of the log-likelihood.

We start this section by introducing some notation. Let $X$ be a random variable with p.d.f $f(\cdot, \theta)$, where $\theta \in \Omega$, and

$$
\ell(x, \theta)=\log f(x, \theta) \quad \text { and } \quad \dot{\ell}(x, \theta)=\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \ell(x, \theta)
$$

As before, $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ denotes the vector $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{x}$ denotes a particular value $\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ assumed by the random vector $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$.

We denote by $f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)$ the value of the density of $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ at the point $\boldsymbol{x}$. Then,

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} f\left(x_{i}, \theta\right)
$$

Thus,

$$
L_{n}\left(\theta, \boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} f\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)=f_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)
$$

and

$$
\ell_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\log L_{n}\left(\theta, \boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \ell\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)
$$

Differentiating with respect to $\theta$ yields

$$
\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log f_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right) .
$$

We call $\dot{\ell}(x, \theta)$ the score function and

$$
\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=0
$$

the score equation. If differentiation is permissible for the purpose of obtaining the MLE, then $\hat{\theta}_{n}$, the MLE, solves the equation

$$
\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right) \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)=0
$$

In this section, our first goal is to find a (nontrivial) lower bound on the variance of unbiased estimators of $g(\theta)$ where $g: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is some differentiable function.

If we can indeed find such a bound (albeit under some regularity conditions) and there is an unbiased estimator of $g(\theta)$ that attains this lower bound, we can conclude that it is the MVUE of $g(\theta)$.

We now impose the following restrictions (regularity conditions) on the model.
(A.1) The set $A_{\theta}=\{x: f(x, \theta)>0\}$ actually does NOT depend on $\theta$ and is subsequently denoted by $A$.
(A.2) If $W\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ is a statistic such that $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(\left|W\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right|\right)<\infty$ for all $\theta$, then,

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[W\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right]=\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \int_{A^{n}} W(\boldsymbol{x}) f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x}=\int_{A^{n}} W(\boldsymbol{x}) \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x}
$$

(A.3) The quantity $\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log f(x, \theta)$ exists for all $x \in A$ and all $\theta \in \Omega$ as a well-defined finite quantity.

The first condition says that the set of possible values of the data vector on which the distribution of $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$ is supported does not vary with $\theta$; this therefore rules out families of distribution like the uniform.

The second assumption is a "smoothness assumption" on the family of densities and is generally happily satisfied for most parametric models we encounter in statistics.

There are various types of simple sufficient conditions that one can impose on $f(x, \theta)$ to make the interchange of integration and differentiation possible - we shall however not bother about these for the moment.

For most of the sequel, for notational simplicity, we will assume that the parameter space $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}$. We define the information about the parameter $\theta$ in the model, namely $I(\theta)$, by

$$
I(\theta):=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}^{2}(X, \theta)\right],
$$

provided it exists as a finite quantity for every $\theta \in \Omega$.
We then have the following theorem.
Theorem 8.1 (Cramer-Rao inequality). All notation being as above, if $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ is an unbiased estimator of $g(\theta)$, then

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) \geq \frac{\left[g^{\prime}(\theta)\right]^{2}}{n I(\theta)}
$$

provided assumptions A.1, A. 2 and A. 3 hold, and $I(\theta)$ exists and is finite for all $\theta$.
The above inequality is the celebrated Cramer-Rao inequality (or the information inequality) and is one of the most well-known inequalities in statistics and has important ramifications in even more advanced forms of inference.

Notice that if we take $g(\theta)=\theta$ then $n^{-1} I(\theta)^{-1}$ gives us a lower bound on the variance of unbiased estimators of $\theta$ in the model.

If $I(\theta)$ is small, the lower bound is large, so unbiased estimators are doing a poor job in general - in other words, the data is not that informative about $\theta$ (within the context of unbiased estimation).

On the other hand, if $I(\theta)$ is big, the lower bound is small, and so if we have a best unbiased estimator of $\theta$ that actually attains this lower bound, we are doing a good job. That is why $I(\theta)$ is referred to as the information about $\theta$.

Proof of Theorem 8.1: Let $\rho_{\theta}$ denote the correlation between $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ and $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$. Then $\rho_{\theta}^{2} \leq 1$ which implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Cov}_{\theta}^{2}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right), \dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right) \leq \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) \cdot \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right) \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

As,

$$
1=\int f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x}, \quad \text { for all } \theta \in \Omega
$$

on differentiating both sides of the above identity with respect to $\theta$ and using A.2 with $W(\boldsymbol{x}) \equiv 1$ we obtain,

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =\int \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x}=\int\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)\right) \frac{1}{f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)} f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x} \\
& =\int\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)\right) f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x}
\end{aligned}
$$

The last expression in the above display is precisely $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]$ which therefore is equal to 0 . Note that,

$$
\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)\right)=n \mathbb{E}_{\theta}[\dot{\ell}(X, \theta)]
$$

since the $\dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)$ 's are i.i.d. Thus, we have $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(\dot{\ell}\left(X_{1}, \theta\right)\right)=0$. This implies that

$$
I(\theta)=\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}(\dot{\ell}(X, \theta))
$$

Further, let $I_{n}(\theta):=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\varphi}_{n}^{2}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{n}(\theta) & =\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right)=\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n} \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(\dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)\right)=n I(\theta)
\end{aligned}
$$

We will refer to $I_{n}(\theta)$ as the information based on $n$ observations. Since $\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]=$ 0 , it follows that

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Cov}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right), \dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right) & =\int T(\boldsymbol{x}) \dot{\ell}_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x} \\
& =\int T(\boldsymbol{x})\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)\right) d \boldsymbol{x} \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \int T(\boldsymbol{x}) f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta) d \boldsymbol{x} \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} g(\theta)=g^{\prime}(\theta)
\end{align*}
$$

Using the above in conjunction in (4) we get,

$$
\left[g^{\prime}(\theta)\right]^{2} \leq \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) I_{n}(\theta)
$$

which is equivalent to what we set out to prove.

There is an alternative expression for the information $I(\theta)$ in terms of the second derivative of the log-likelihood with respect to $\theta$. If

$$
\ddot{\ell}(x, \theta):=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} \log f(x, \theta)
$$

exists for all $x \in A$ and for all $\theta \in \Theta$ then, we have the following identity:

$$
I(\theta)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(\dot{\ell}(X, \theta)^{2}\right)=-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}(\ddot{\ell}(X, \theta))
$$

provided we can differentiate twice under the integral sign; more concretely, if

$$
\int \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} f(x, \theta) d x=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} \int f(x, \theta) d x=0
$$

To prove the above identity, first note that,

$$
\dot{\ell}(x, \theta)=\frac{1}{f(x, \theta)}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x, \theta)\right] .
$$

Now,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ddot{\ell}(x, \theta) & =\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(\dot{\ell}(x, \theta))=\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}\left(\frac{1}{f(x, \theta)} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x, \theta)\right) \\
& =\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} f(x, \theta) \frac{1}{f(x, \theta)}-\frac{1}{f^{2}(x, \theta)}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} f(x, \theta)\right)^{2} \\
& =\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} f(x, \theta) \frac{1}{f(x, \theta)}-\dot{\ell}(x, \theta)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{E}_{\theta}[\ddot{\ell}(X, \theta)] & =\int \ddot{\ell}(x, \theta) f(x, \theta) d x \\
& =\int \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} f(x, \theta) d x-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}^{2}(X, \theta)\right] \\
& =0-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\dot{\ell}^{2}(X, \theta)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where the first term on the right side vanishes by virtue of $(\star)$. This establishes the desired equality. It follows that,

$$
I_{n}(\theta)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[-\ddot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]
$$

where $\ddot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$ is the second partial derivative of $\ell_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$ with respect to $\theta$. To see this, note that,

$$
\ddot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \ell\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \ddot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right),
$$

so that

$$
\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\ddot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)\right]=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\ddot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)\right]=n \mathbb{E}_{\theta}[\ddot{\ell}(X, \theta)]=-n I(\theta) .
$$

We now look at some applications of the Cramer-Rao inequality.
Example 1: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $\operatorname{Pois}(\theta), \theta>0$. Then

$$
\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(X_{1}\right)=\theta
$$

Let us first write down the likelihood of the data. We have,

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{e^{-\theta} \theta^{x_{i}}}{x_{i}!}=e^{-n \theta} \theta^{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}}\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}!\right)^{-1} .
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \ell_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)=-n \theta+\log \theta\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\right)-\log \prod_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}! \\
& \dot{\ell}_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, \theta)=-n+\frac{1}{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the information about $\theta$ based on $n$ observations is given by,

$$
I_{n}(\theta)=\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(-n+\frac{1}{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right)=\frac{1}{\theta^{2}} \operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right)=\frac{n \theta}{\theta^{2}}=\frac{n}{\theta}
$$

The assumptions needed for the Cramer-Rao inequality to hold are all satisfied for this model, and it follows that for any unbiased estimator $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ of $g(\theta)=\theta$ we have,

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) \geq \frac{1}{I_{n}(\theta)}=\frac{\theta}{n}
$$

Since $\bar{X}_{n}$ is unbiased for $\theta$ and has variance $\theta / n$ we conclude that $\bar{X}_{n}$ is the best unbiased estimator (MVUE) of $\theta$.

Example 2: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $N(0, V)$. Consider once again, the joint density of the $n$ observations:

$$
f_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, V)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi V)^{n / 2}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2 V} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}\right)
$$

Now,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{\ell}_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, V) & =\frac{\partial}{\partial V}\left(-\frac{n}{2} \log 2 \pi-\frac{n}{2} \log V-\frac{1}{2 V} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}\right) \\
& =-\frac{n}{2 V}+\frac{1}{2 V^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Differentiating yet again we obtain,

$$
\ddot{\ell}_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}, V)=\frac{n}{2 V^{2}}-\frac{1}{V^{3}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2} .
$$

Then, the information for $V$ based on $n$ observations is,

$$
I_{n}(V)=-\mathbb{E}_{V}\left(\frac{n}{2 V^{2}}-\frac{1}{V^{3}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}\right)=\frac{n}{2 V^{2}}+\frac{1}{V^{3}} n V=\frac{n}{2 V^{2}}
$$

Now consider the problem of estimating $g(V)=V$. For any unbiased estimator $S\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ of $V$, the Cramer-Rao inequality tells us that

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{V}\left(S\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) \geq I_{n}(V)^{-1}=\frac{2 V^{2}}{n}
$$

Consider, $\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2} / n$ as an estimator of $V$. This is clearly unbiased for $V$ and the variance is given by,

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{V}\left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{n} \operatorname{Var}_{V}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)=\frac{V^{2}}{n} \operatorname{Var}_{V}\left(\frac{X_{1}^{2}}{V}\right)=\frac{2 V^{2}}{n}
$$

since $X_{1}^{2} / V \sim \chi_{1}^{2}$ which has variance 2. It follows that $\sum X_{i}^{2} / n$ is the best unbiased estimator of $V$ in this model.

## 9 Large Sample Properties of the MLE

In this section we study some of the large sample properties of the MLE in standard parametric models and how these can be used to construct confidence sets for $\theta$ or a function of $\theta$. We will see in this section that in the long run MLEs are the best possible estimators in a variety of different models.

We will stick to models satisfying the restrictions (A1, A2 and A3) imposed in the last section. Hence our results will not apply to the uniform distribution (or ones similar to the uniform).

Let us throw our minds back to the Cramer-Rao inequality. When does an unbiased estimator $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ of $g(\theta)$ attain the bound given by this inequality? This requires:

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right)=\frac{\left(g^{\prime}(\theta)\right)^{2}}{n I(\theta)}
$$

But this is equivalent to the assertion that the correlation between $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ and $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$ is equal to 1 or -1 .

This means that $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$ can be expressed as a linear function of $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$.
In fact, this is a necessary and sufficient condition for the information bound to be attained by the variance of $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$.

It turns out that this is generally difficult to achieve. Thus, there will be many different functions of $\theta$, for which best unbiased estimators will exist but whose variance will not hit the information bound. The example below will illustrate this point.

Example: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $\operatorname{Ber}(\theta)$. We have,

$$
f(x, \theta)=\theta^{x}(1-\theta)^{1-x} \quad \text { for } x=0,1
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{gathered}
\ell(x, \theta)=x \log \theta+(1-x) \log (1-\theta), \\
\dot{\ell}(x, \theta)=\frac{x}{\theta}-\frac{1-x}{1-\theta}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\ddot{\ell}(x, \theta)=-\frac{x}{\theta^{2}}-\frac{1-x}{(1-\theta)^{2}} .
$$

Thus,

$$
\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}{\theta}-\frac{n-\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}}{1-\theta} .
$$

Recall that the MLE solves $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=0$.
Check that in this situation, this gives you precisely $\bar{X}_{n}$ as your MLE.

Let us compute the information $I(\theta)$. We have,

$$
I(\theta)=-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\ddot{\ell}\left(X_{1}, \theta\right)\right]=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(\frac{X_{1}}{\theta^{2}}+\frac{1-X_{1}}{(1-\theta)^{2}}\right)=\frac{1}{\theta}+\frac{1}{1-\theta}=\frac{1}{\theta(1-\theta)} .
$$

Thus,

$$
I_{n}(\theta)=n I(\theta)=\frac{n}{\theta(1-\theta)}
$$

Consider unbiased estimation of $\Psi(\theta)=\theta$ based on $\boldsymbol{X}_{n}$. Let $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ be an unbiased estimator of $\theta$. Then, by the information inequality,

$$
\operatorname{Var}_{\theta}\left(T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)\right) \geq \frac{\theta(1-\theta)}{n}
$$

Note that the variance of $\bar{X}$ is precisely $\theta(1-\theta) / n$, so that it is the MVUE of $\theta$. Note that,

$$
\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)=\frac{n \bar{X}}{\theta}-\frac{n(1-\bar{X})}{1-\theta}=\left(\frac{n}{\theta}+\frac{n}{1-\theta}\right) \bar{X}-\frac{n}{1-\theta} .
$$

Thus, $\bar{X}_{n}$ is indeed linear in $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$.

Consider now estimating a different function of $\theta$, say $g(\theta)=\theta^{2}$.
This is the probability of getting two consecutive heads. Suppose we try to find an unbiased estimator of this parameter.

Then $S\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)=X_{1} X_{2}$ is an unbiased estimator $\left(\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{1} X_{2}\right)=\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{1}\right) \mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left(X_{2}\right)=\theta^{2}\right)$, but then so is $X_{i} X_{j}$ for any $i \neq j$.

We can find the best unbiased estimator of $\theta^{2}$ in this model by using techniques beyond the scope of this course - it can be shown that any estimator $T\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ that can be written as a function of $\bar{X}$ and is unbiased for $\theta^{2}$ is an MVUE (and indeed there is one such).

Verify that,

$$
T^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)=\frac{n \bar{X}^{2}-\bar{X}}{n-1}
$$

is unbiased for $\theta^{2}$ and is therefore an (in fact the) MVUE.
However, the variance of $T^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ does not attain the information bound for estimating $g(\theta)$ which is $4 \theta^{3}(1-\theta) / n$ (Exercise).

Exercise: Verify, in the Bernoulli example above in this section, that

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(g\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0,4 \theta^{3}(1-\theta)\right) .
$$

This can be checked by direct (somewhat tedious) computation or by noting that $T^{*}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}\right)$ is not a linear function of $\dot{\ell}_{n}\left(\boldsymbol{X}_{n}, \theta\right)$.

The question then is whether we can propose an estimator of $\theta^{2}$ that does achieve the bound, at least approximately, in the long run.

It turns out that this is actually possible. Since the MLE of $\theta$ is $\bar{X}$, the MLE of $g(\theta)$ is proposed as the plug-in value $g(\bar{X})=\bar{X}^{2}$.

This is not an unbiased estimator of $g(\theta)$ in finite samples, but has excellent behavior in the long run. In fact,

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(g\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0,4 \theta^{3}(1-\theta)\right) .
$$

Thus for large values of $n, g(\bar{X})$ behaves approximately like a normal random variable with mean $g(\theta)$ and variance $4 \theta^{3}(1-\theta) / n$.
In this sense, $g\left(\bar{X}_{n}\right)$ is asymptotically (in the long run) unbiased and asymptotically efficient (in the sense that it has minimum variance).

Here is an important proposition that establishes the limiting behavior of the MLE.
Proposition 9.1. If $\hat{\theta}_{n}$ is the MLE of $\theta$ obtained by solving

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)=0
$$

then the following representation for the MLE is valid:

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}-\theta\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I(\theta)^{-1} \dot{\ell}\left(X_{i}, \theta\right)+r_{n}
$$

where $r_{n}$ converges to 0 in probability. It follows by a direct application of the CLT that,

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}-\theta\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0, I(\theta)^{-1}\right)
$$

The above result shows MLE $\hat{\theta}$ is (asymptotically) the best possible estimator: Not only does its long term distribution center around $\theta$, the quantity of interest, its distribution is also less spread out than that of any "reasonable" estimator of $\theta$. If $S_{n}$ is a "reasonable" estimator of $\theta$, with

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(S_{n}-\theta\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0, \xi^{2}(\theta)\right),
$$

then $\xi^{2}(\theta) \geq I(\theta)^{-1}$.

Recall the delta method.

Proposition 9.2 (Delta method). Suppose $T_{n}$ is an estimator of $\theta$ (based on i.i.d observations, $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ from $P_{\theta}$ ) that satisfies:

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(T_{n}-\theta\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0, \sigma^{2}(\theta)\right) .
$$

Here $\sigma^{2}(\theta)$ is the limiting variance and depends on the underlying parameter $\theta$. Then, for a continuously differentiable function $h$ such that $h^{\prime}(g(\theta)) \neq 0$, we have:

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(g\left(T_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0,\left(g^{\prime}(\theta)\right)^{2} \sigma^{2}(\theta)\right) .
$$

We can now deduce the limiting behavior of the MLE of $g(\theta)$ given by $g\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}\right)$ for any smooth function $g$ such that $g^{\prime}(\theta) \neq 0$.

Combining Proposition 9.1 with Proposition 9.2 yields (take $T_{n}=\hat{\theta}_{n}$ )

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(g\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}\right)-g(\theta)\right) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0, g^{\prime}(\theta)^{2} I(\theta)^{-1}\right) .
$$

Thus, for large $n$,

$$
g\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}\right) \sim_{a p p x} N\left(g(\theta), g^{\prime}(\theta)^{2}(n I(\theta))^{-1}\right) .
$$

Thus $g\left(\hat{\theta}_{n}\right)$ is asymptotically unbiased for $g(\theta)$ (unbiased in the long run) and its variance is approximately the information bound for unbiased estimators of $g(\theta)$.

Constructing confidence sets for $\theta$ : Suppose that, for simplicity, $\theta$ takes values in a subset of $\mathbb{R}$. Since,

$$
\sqrt{n}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \rightarrow_{d} N\left(0, I(\theta)^{-1}\right),
$$

it follows that

$$
\sqrt{n I(\theta)}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \rightarrow_{d} N(0,1) .
$$

Thus, the left side acts as an approximate pivot for $\theta$. We have,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \sqrt{n I(\theta)}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right) \approx 1-\alpha .
$$

An approximate level $1-\alpha$ confidence set for $\theta$ is obtained as

$$
\left\{\theta:-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \sqrt{n I(\theta)}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right\} .
$$

To find the above confidence set, one needs to solve for all values of $\theta$ satisfying the inequalities in the above display; this can however be a potentially complicated exercise depending on the functional form for $I(\theta)$.

However, if the sample size $n$ is large $I(\hat{\theta})$ can be expected to be close to $I(\theta)$ with high probability and hence the following is also valid:

$$
P_{\theta}\left[-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \sqrt{n I(\hat{\theta})}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right] \approx 1-\alpha .(\star \star)
$$

This immediately gives an approximate level $1-\alpha$ CI for $\theta$ as:

$$
\left[\hat{\theta}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{n I(\hat{\theta})}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \hat{\theta}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{n I(\hat{\theta})}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right]
$$

Let's see what this implies for the Bernoulli example discussed above. Recall that $I(\theta)=(\theta(1-\theta))^{-1}$ and $\hat{\theta}=\bar{X}$. The approximate level $1-\alpha \mathrm{CI}$ is then given by,

$$
\left[\bar{X}-\sqrt{\frac{\bar{X}(1-\bar{X})}{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \bar{X}+\sqrt{\frac{\bar{X}(1-\bar{X})}{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right] .
$$

Exercise: Find explicitly

$$
\left\{\theta:-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \sqrt{n I(\theta)}(\hat{\theta}-\theta) \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right\}
$$

in the following cases (a) $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Bernoulli( $\theta$ ). (b) $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Pois}(\theta)$.

You will see that this involves solving for the roots of a quadratic equation. As in the Bernoulli example, one can also get an approximate CI for $\theta$ in the Poisson setting on using $(\star \star)$. Verify that this yields the following level $1-\alpha$ CI for $\theta$ :

$$
\left[\bar{X}-\sqrt{\frac{\bar{X}}{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}, \bar{X}+\sqrt{\frac{\bar{X}}{n}} z_{\alpha / 2}\right] .
$$

The recipe $(\star \star)$ is somewhat unsatisfactory because it involves one more level of approximation in that $I(\theta)$ is replaced by $I(\hat{\theta})$ (note that there is already one level of approximation in that the pivots being considered are only approximately $N(0,1)$ by the CLT).

## 10 Hypothesis Testing

### 10.1 Principles of Hypothesis Testing

We are given data (say $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ i.i.d $P_{\theta}$ ) from a model that is parametrized by $\theta$. We consider a statistical problem involving $\theta$ whose value is unknown but must lie in
a certain space $\Omega$. We consider the testing problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \theta \in \Omega_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta \in \Omega_{1}, \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Omega_{0} \cap \Omega_{1}=\emptyset$ and $\Omega_{0} \cup \Omega_{1}=\Omega$.
Here the hypothesis $H_{0}$ is called the null hypothesis and $H_{1}$ is called the alternative hypothesis.

Question: Is there enough evidence in the data against the null hypothesis (in which case we reject it) or should we continue to stick to it?

Such questions arise very naturally in many different fields of application.

Definition 16 (One-sided and two-sided hypotheses). Let $\theta$ be a one-dimensional parameter.

- one-sided hypotheses

$$
-H_{0}: \theta \leq \theta_{0}, \text { and } H_{1}: \theta>\theta_{0} \text {, or }
$$

$$
-H_{0}: \theta \geq \theta_{0}, \text { and } H_{1}: \theta<\theta_{0}
$$

- two-sided hypotheses $H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0}$, and $H_{1}: \theta \neq \theta_{0}$.
$H_{0}$ is simple if $\Omega_{0}$ is a set with only one point; otherwise, $H_{0}$ is composite.

Testing for a normal mean: Suppose that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ is a sample from a $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ distribution and let, initially, $\sigma^{2}$ be known.

We want to test the null hypothesis $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ against the alternative $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$.
Example: For concreteness, $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ could be the heights of $n$ individuals in some tribal population. The distribution of heights in a (homogeneous) population is usually normal, so that a $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ model is appropriate. If we have some a-priori reason to believe that the average height in this population is around 60 inches, we could postulate a null hypothesis of the form $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0} \equiv 60$; the alternative hypothesis is $H_{1}: \mu \neq 60$.

### 10.2 Critical regions and test statistics

Consider a problem in which we wish to test the following hypotheses:

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \theta \in \Omega_{0}, \quad \text { and } \quad H_{1}: \theta \in \Omega_{1} . \tag{6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Question: How do we do the test?
The statistician must decide, after observing data, which of the hypothesis $H_{0}$ or $H_{1}$ appears to be true.

A procedure for deciding which hypothesis to choose is called a test procedure of simply a test. We will denote a test by $\delta$.

Suppose we can observe a random sample $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ drawn from a distribution that involves the unknown parameter $\theta$, e.g., suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $P_{\theta}$, $\theta \in \Omega$.

Let $S$ denote the set of all possible values of the $n$-dimensional random vector $\mathbf{X}$.
We specify a test procedure by partitioning S into two subsets: $S=S_{0} \cup S_{1}$, where

- the rejection region (sometimes also called the critical region) $S_{1}$ contains the values of $\mathbf{X}$ for which we will reject $H_{0}$, and
- the other subset $S_{0}$ (usually called the acceptance region) contains the values of $\mathbf{X}$ for which we will not reject $H_{0}$.

A test procedure is determined by specifying the critical region $S_{1}$ of the test.
In most hypothesis-testing problems, the critical region is defined in terms of a statistic, $T=\varphi(\mathbf{X})$.

Definition 17 (Test statistic/rejection region). Let $\mathbf{X}$ be a random sample from a distribution that depends on a parameter $\theta$. Let $T=\varphi(\mathbf{X})$ be a statistic, and let $R$ be a subset of the real line. Suppose that a test procedure is of the form:

$$
\text { reject } H_{0} \quad \text { if } \quad T \in R \text {. }
$$

Then we call $T$ a test statistic, and we call $R$ the rejection region of the test:

$$
S_{1}=\{\mathbf{x}: \varphi(\mathbf{x}) \in R\} .
$$

Typically, the rejection region for a test based on a test statistic $T$ will be some fixed interval or the complement of some fixed interval.

If the test rejects $H_{0}$ when $T \geq c$, the rejection region is the interval $[c, \infty)$. Indeed, most of the tests can be written in the form:

$$
\text { reject } H_{0} \quad \text { if } \quad T \geq c
$$

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ is unknown, and $\sigma>0$ is assumed known.

Suppose that we want to test $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$.
Some of these procedures can be justified using formal paradigms. Under the null hypothesis the $X_{i}$ 's are i.i.d $N\left(\mu_{0}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ and the sample mean $\bar{X}$ follows $N\left(\mu_{0}, \sigma^{2} / n\right)$.

Thus, it is reasonable to take $T=\varphi(\mathbf{X})=\left|\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right|$.
Large deviations of the observed value of $\bar{X}$ from $\mu_{0}$ would lead us to suspect that the null hypothesis might not be true.

Thus, a reasonable test can be to reject $H_{0}$ if $T=\left|\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right|>c$, for some "large" constant $c$.

But how large is large? We will discuss this soon...

Associated with the test procedure $\delta$ are two different kinds of error that we can commit. These are called Type 1 error and Type 2 error (Draw the $2 \times 2$ table!).

| State Decision | Fail to reject $H_{0}$ | Reject $H_{0}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $H_{0}$ True | Correct | Type 1 error |
| $H_{1}$ True | Type 2 error | Correct |

Table 1: Hypothesis test.

Type 1 error occurs if we reject the null hypothesis when actually $H_{0}$ is true.
Type 2 error occurs if we do not reject the null hypothesis when actually $H_{0}$ is false.

### 10.3 Power function and types of error

Let $\delta$ be a test procedure. If $S_{1}$ denotes the critical region of $\delta$, then the power function of the test $\delta, \pi(\theta \mid \delta)$, is defined by the relation

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(\mathbf{X} \in S_{1}\right) \quad \text { for } \quad \theta \in \Omega
$$

Thus, the power function $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ specifies for each possible value of $\theta$, the probability that $\delta$ will reject $H_{0}$. If $\delta$ is described in terms of a test statistic $T$ and rejection region $R$, the power function is

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T \in R) \quad \text { for } \quad \theta \in \Omega
$$

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d Uniform $(0, \theta)$, where $\theta>0$ is unknown.
Suppose that we are interested in the following hypotheses:

$$
H_{0}: 3 \leq \theta \leq 4, \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta<3, \text { or } \theta>4 .
$$

We know that the MLE of $\theta$ is $X_{(n)}=\max \left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right\}$.
Note that $X_{(n)}<\theta$.
Suppose that we use a test $\delta$ given by the critical region

$$
S_{1}=\left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}: x_{(n)} \leq 2.9 \text { or } x_{(n)} \geq 4\right\} .
$$

Question: Find the power function $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ ?
Solution: The power function of $\delta$ is

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(X_{(n)} \leq 2.9 \text { or } X_{(n)}>4\right)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(X_{(n)} \leq 2.9\right)+\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(X_{(n)} \geq 4\right)
$$

Case (i): Suppose that $\theta \leq 2.9$. Then

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(X_{(n)} \leq 2.9\right)=1
$$

Case (ii): Suppose that $2.9<\theta<4$. Then

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(X_{(n)} \leq 2.9\right)=\left(\frac{2.9}{\theta}\right)^{n}
$$

Case (iii): Suppose that $\theta>4$. Then

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\left(\frac{2.9}{\theta}\right)^{n}+\left[1-\left(\frac{4}{\theta}\right)^{n}\right]
$$

The ideal power function would be one for which

- $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=0$ for every value of $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$, and
- $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=1$ for every value of $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.

If the power function of a test $\delta$ actually had these values, then regardless of the actual value of $\theta, \delta$ would lead to the correct decision with probability 1 .

In a practical problem, however, there would seldom exist any test procedure having this ideal power function.

- Type-I error: rejecting $H_{0}$ given that $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$. It occurs with probability $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$.
- Type-II error: not rejecting $H_{0}$ given that $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$. It occurs with probability $1-\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$.

Ideal goals: we would like the power function $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ to be low for values of $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$, and high for $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.

Generally, these two goals work against each other. That is, if we choose $\delta$ to make $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ small for $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$, we will usually find that $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ is small for $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$ as well.

Examples:

- The test procedure $\delta_{0}$ that never rejects $H_{0}$, regardless of what data are observed, will have $\pi\left(\theta \mid \delta_{0}\right)=0$ for all $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$. However, for this procedure $\pi\left(\theta \mid \delta_{0}\right)=0$ for all $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$ as well.
- Similarly, the test $\delta_{1}$ that always rejects $H_{0}$ will have $\pi\left(\theta \mid \delta_{1}\right)=1$ for all $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$, but it will also have $\pi\left(\theta \mid \delta_{1}\right)=1$ for all $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$.

Hence, there is a need to strike an appropriate balance between the two goals of

$$
\text { low power in } \Omega_{0} \text { and high power in } \Omega_{1} \text {. }
$$

1. The most popular method for striking a balance between the two goals is to choose a number $\alpha_{0} \in(0,1)$ and require that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi(\theta \mid \delta) \leq \alpha_{0}, \quad \text { for all } \quad \theta \in \Omega_{0} \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This $\alpha_{0}$ will usually be a small positive fraction (historically .05 or .01 ) and will be called the level of significance or simply level.
Then, among all tests that satisfy (7), the statistician seeks a test whose power function is as high as can be obtained for $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.
2. Another method of balancing the probabilities of type I and type II errors is to minimize a linear combination of the different probabilities of error.

### 10.4 Significance level

Definition 18 (level/size). (of the test)

- A test that satisfies (7) is called a level $\alpha_{0}$ test, and we say that the test has level of significance $\alpha_{0}$.
- The size $\alpha(\delta)$ of a test $\delta$ is defined as follows:

$$
\alpha(\delta)=\sup _{\theta \in \Omega_{0}} \pi(\theta \mid \delta) .
$$

It follows from Definition 18 that:

- A test $\delta$ is a level $\alpha_{0}$ test iff $\alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha_{0}$.
- If the null hypothesis is simple (that is, $H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0}$ ), then $\alpha(\delta)=\pi\left(\theta_{0} \mid \delta\right)$.


## Making a test have a specific significance level

Suppose that we wish to test the hypotheses

$$
H_{0}: \theta \in \Omega_{0}, \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta \in \Omega_{1}
$$

Let $T$ be a test statistic, and suppose that our test will reject the null hypothesis if $T \geq c$, for some constant $c$. Suppose also that we desire our test to have the level of significance $\alpha_{0}$. The power function of our test is $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T \geq c)$, and we want that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sup _{\theta \in \Omega_{0}} \mathbb{P}_{\theta}(T \geq c) \leq \alpha_{0} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Remarks:

1. It is clear that the power function, and hence the left side of (8), are nonincreasing functions of $c$.
Hence, (8) will be satisfied for large values of $c$, but not for small values.
If $T$ has a continuous distribution, then it is usually simple to find an appropriate c.
2. Whenever we choose a test procedure, we should also examine the power function. If one has made a good choice, then the power function should generally be larger for $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$ than for $\theta \in \Omega_{0}$.

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ is unknown, and $\sigma>0$ is assumed known. We want to test $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$.

Suppose that the null hypothesis $H_{0}$ is true.

If the variance of the sample mean is, say, 100 , a deviation of $\bar{X}$ from $\mu_{0}$ by 15 is not really unusual.

On the other hand if the variance is 10 , then a deviation of the sample mean from $\mu_{0}$ by 15 is really sensational.

Thus the quantity $\left|\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right|$ in itself is not sufficient to formulate a decision regarding rejection of the null hypothesis.

We need to adjust for the underlying variance. This is done by computing the socalled $z$-statistic,

$$
Z:=\frac{\bar{X}-\mu_{0}}{\sigma / \sqrt{n}} \equiv \frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}
$$

and rejecting the null hypothesis for large absolute values of this statistic.
Under the null hypothesis $Z$ follows $N(0,1)$; thus an absolute $Z$-value of 3.5 is quite unlikely. Therefore if we observe an absolute $Z$-value of 3.5 we might rule in favor of the alternative hypothesis.

You can see now that we need a threshold value, or in other words a critical point such that if the $Z$-value exceeds that point we reject. Our test procedure $\delta$ then looks like,

$$
\text { reject } H_{0} \quad \text { if } \quad\left|\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>c_{n, \alpha_{0}}
$$

where $c_{n, \alpha_{0}}$ is the critical value and will depend on $\alpha_{0}$ which is the tolerance for the Type 1 error, i.e., the level that we set beforehand.
The quantity $c_{n, \alpha_{0}}$ is determined using the relation

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu_{0}}\left(\left|\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>c_{n, \alpha_{0}}\right)=\alpha_{0}
$$

Straightforward algebra then yields that

$$
P_{\mu_{0}}\left(-c_{n, \alpha_{0}} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \bar{X}-\mu_{0} \leq c_{n, \alpha_{0}} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right)=1-\alpha_{0}
$$

whence we can choose $c_{n, \alpha_{0}}=z_{\alpha_{0} / 2}$, the $\frac{\alpha_{0}}{2}$-th quantile of the $N(0,1)$ distribution.
The acceptance region $\mathcal{A}$ (or $S_{0}$ ) for the null hypothesis is therefore

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right): \mu_{0}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2} \leq \bar{x} \leq \mu_{0}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2}\right\}
$$

So we accept whenever $\bar{X}$ lies in a certain window of $\mu_{0}$, the postulated value under the null, and reject otherwise which is in accordance with intuition.

The length of the window is determined by the tolerance level $\alpha_{0}$, the underlying variance $\sigma^{2}$ and of course the sample size $n$.


Figure 4: The power function $\pi(\mu \mid \delta)$ for $\mu_{0}=0, \sigma=1$ and $n=25$.

## 10.5 $P$-value

The $p$-value is the smallest level $\alpha_{0}$ such that we would reject $H_{0}$ at level $\alpha_{0}$ with the observed data.

For this reason, the $p$-value is also called the observed level of significance.
Example: If the observed value of $Z$ was 2.78 , and that the corresponding $p$-value $=$ 0.0054 . It is then said that the observed value of $Z$ is just significant at the level of significance 0.0054 .

## Advantages:

1. No need to select beforehand an arbitrary level of significance $\alpha_{0}$ at which to carry out the test.
2. When we learn that the observed value of Z was just significant at the level of significance 0.0054 , we immediately know that $H_{0}$ would be rejected for every larger value of $\alpha_{0}$ and would not be rejected for any smaller value.

### 10.6 Testing simple hypotheses: optimal tests

Let the random vector $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ come from a distribution for which the joint p.m.f/p.d.f is either $f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$ or $f_{1}(\mathbf{x})$. Let $\Omega=\left\{\theta_{0}, \theta_{1}\right\}$. Then,

- $\theta=\theta_{0}$ stands for the case in which the data have p.m.f/p.d.f $f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$,
- $\theta=\theta_{1}$ stands for the case in which the data have p.m.f/p.d.f $f_{1}(\mathbf{x})$.

We are then interested in testing the following simple hypotheses:

$$
H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta=\theta_{1}
$$

In this case, we have special notation for the probabilities of type I and type II errors:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha(\delta) & =\mathbb{P}_{\theta_{0}}\left(\text { Rejecting } H_{0}\right) \\
\beta(\delta) & =\mathbb{P}_{\theta_{1}}\left(\text { Not rejecting } H_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

### 10.6.1 Minimizing the $\mathbb{P}$ (Type-II error)

Suppose that the probability $\alpha(\delta)$ of an error of type I is not permitted to be greater than a specified level of significance, and it is desired to find a procedure $\delta$ for which $\beta(\delta)$ will be a minimum.

Theorem 10.1 (Neyman-Pearson lemma). Suppose that $\delta^{\prime}$ is a test procedure that has the following form for some constant $k>0$ :

- $H_{0}$ is not rejected if $f_{1}(\mathbf{x})<k f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$,
- $H_{0}$ is rejected if $f_{1}(\mathbf{x})>k f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$, and
- $H_{0}$ can be either rejected or not if $f_{1}(\mathbf{x})=k f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$.

Let $\delta$ be another test procedure. Then,

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { if } & \alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha\left(\delta^{\prime}\right), & \text { then it follows that }
\end{array} \quad \beta(\delta) \geq \beta\left(\delta^{\prime}\right), ~ \begin{array}{ll}
\text { if } & \alpha(\delta)<\alpha\left(\delta^{\prime}\right), \\
\text { then it follows that } & \beta(\delta)>\beta\left(\delta^{\prime}\right) .
\end{array}
$$

Example: Suppose that $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is a random sample from the normal distribution with unknown mean $\theta$ and known variance 1 . We are interested in testing:

$$
H_{0}: \theta=0 \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta=1
$$

We want to find a test procedure for which $\beta(\delta)$ will be a minimum among all test procedures for which $\alpha(\delta) \leq 0.05$.

We have,
$f_{0}(\mathbf{x})=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}\right) \quad$ and $\quad f_{1}(\mathbf{x})=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{n / 2}} \exp \left[-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-1\right)^{2}\right]$.

After some algebra, the likelihood ratio $f_{1}(\mathbf{x}) / f_{0}(\mathbf{x})$ can be written in the form

$$
\frac{f_{1}(\mathbf{x})}{f_{0}(\mathbf{x})}=\exp \left[n\left(\bar{x}-\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]
$$

Thus, rejecting $H_{0}$ when the likelihood ratio is greater than a specified positive constant $k$ is equivalent to rejecting $H_{0}$ when the sample mean $\bar{X}$ is greater than $k^{\prime}:=1 / 2+\log k / n$, another constant. Thus, we want to find, $k^{\prime}$ such that

$$
\mathbb{P}_{0}\left(\bar{X}>k^{\prime}\right)=0.05
$$

Now,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathbb{P}_{0}\left(\bar{X}>k^{\prime}\right)=\mathbb{P}_{0}\left(\sqrt{n} \bar{X}>\sqrt{n} k^{\prime}\right)=\mathbb{P}_{0}\left(Z>\sqrt{n} k^{\prime}\right)=0.05 \\
\Rightarrow \quad & \sqrt{n} k^{\prime}=1.645 .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 10.7 Uniformly most powerful (UMP) tests

Let the null and/or alternative hypothesis be composite

- $H_{0}: \theta \leq \theta_{0}$ and $H_{1}: \theta>\theta_{0}$, or
- $H_{0}: \theta \geq \theta_{0}$ and $H_{1}: \theta<\theta_{0}$

We suppose that $\Omega_{0}$ and $\Omega_{1}$ are disjoint subsets of $\Omega$, and the hypotheses to be tested are

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \theta \in \Omega_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \theta \in \Omega_{1} \tag{9}
\end{equation*}
$$

- The subset $\Omega_{1}$ contains at least two distinct values of $\theta$, in which case the alternative hypothesis $H_{1}$ is composite.
- The null hypothesis $H_{0}$ may be either simple or composite.

We consider only procedures in which

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(\text { Rejecting } H_{0}\right) \leq \alpha_{0} \quad \forall \theta \in \Omega_{0}
$$

that is

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta) \leq \alpha_{0} \quad \forall \theta \in \Omega_{0}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha_{0} \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, among all test procedures that satisfy the requirement (10), we want to find one such that

- the probability of type II error is as small as possible for every $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$, or
- the value of $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ is as large as possible for every value of $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.

There might be no single test procedure $\delta$ that maximizes the power function $\pi(\theta \mid \delta)$ simultaneously for every value of $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.

In some problems, however, there will exist a test procedure that satisfies this criterion. Such a procedure, when it exists, is called a UMP test.

Definition 19 (Uniformly most powerful (UMP) test). A test procedure $\delta^{*}$ is a uniformly most powerful (UMP) test of the hypotheses (9) at the level of significance $\alpha_{0}$ if

$$
\alpha\left(\delta^{*}\right) \leq \alpha_{0}
$$

and, for every other test procedure $\delta$ such that $\alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha_{0}$, it is true that

$$
\pi(\theta \mid \delta) \leq \pi\left(\theta \mid \delta^{*}\right)
$$

for every value of $\theta \in \Omega_{1}$.

Usually no test will uniformly most powerful against ALL alternatives, except in the special case of "monotone likelihood ratio" (MLR).

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from a normal distribution for which the mean $\mu$ (unknown) and the variance $\sigma^{2}$ (known). Consider testing $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$. Even in this simple example, there is no UMP test.

### 10.8 The $t$-test

### 10.8.1 Testing hypotheses about the mean with unknown variance

- Problem: testing hypotheses about the mean of a normal distribution when both the mean and the variance are unknown.
- The random variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from a normal distribution for which the mean $\mu$ and the variance $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown.
- The parameter space $\Omega$ in this problem comprises every two-dimensional vector $\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$, where $-\infty<\mu<\infty$ and $\sigma^{2}>0$.
- $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$
- Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{n}=\frac{\bar{X}_{n}-\mu_{0}}{s_{n} / \sqrt{n}} \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $s_{n}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}}$.

- We reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
\left|U_{n}\right| \geq T_{n-1}^{-1}\left(1-\frac{\alpha_{0}}{2}\right)
$$

the $\left(1-\alpha_{0} / 2\right)$-quantile of the $t$-distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom and $U_{n}$ is defined in (11).

- $p$-values for $t$-tests: The $p$-value from the observed data and a specific test is the smallest $\alpha_{0}$ such that we would reject the null hypothesis at level of significance $\alpha_{0}$.
Let $u$ be the observed value of the statistic $U_{n}$. Thus the $p$-value of the test is

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(\left|U_{n}\right|>|u|\right),
$$

where $U_{n} \sim T_{n-1}$, under $H_{0}$.

- The $p$-value is $2\left[1-T_{n-1}(|u|)\right]$, where $u$ be the observed value of the statistic $U_{n}$.


## The Complete power function

Before we study the case when $\sigma>0$ is unknown, let us go back to the case when $\sigma$ is known.
Our test $\delta$ is "reject $H_{0}$ if $\left|\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>z_{\alpha / 2}$ ".
Thus we have,

$$
\pi(\mu \mid \delta)=\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(\left|\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>z_{\alpha / 2}\right)
$$

which is just,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(\left|\frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu)}{\sigma}+\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>z_{\alpha / 2}\right)
$$

But when $\mu$ is the population mean, $\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}-\mu) / \sigma$ is $N(0,1)$. If $Z$ denotes a $N(0,1)$ variable then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\pi(\mu \mid \delta) & =\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(\left|Z+\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right|>z_{\alpha / 2}\right) \\
& =\mathbb{P}_{\mu}\left(Z+\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}>z_{\alpha / 2}\right)+\mathbb{P}\left(Z+\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}<-z_{\alpha / 2}\right) \\
& =1-\Phi\left(z_{\alpha / 2}-\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right)+\Phi\left(-z_{\alpha / 2}-\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right) \\
& =\Phi\left(-z_{\alpha / 2}+\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right)+\Phi\left(-z_{\alpha / 2}-\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Check from the above calculations that $\pi\left(\mu_{0} \mid \delta\right)=\alpha$, the level of the test $\delta$.
Notice that the test function $\delta$ depends on the value $\mu_{0}$ under the null but it does not depend on any value in the alternative.

The power increases as the true value $\mu$ deviates further from $\mu_{0}$.
It is easy to check that $\pi(\mu \mid \delta)$ diverges to 1 as $\mu$ diverges to $\infty$ or $-\infty$.
Moreover the power function is symmetric around $\mu_{0}$. In other words, $\pi\left(\mu_{0}+\Delta \mid \delta\right)=$ $\pi\left(\mu_{0}-\Delta \mid \delta\right)$ where $\Delta>0$.

To see this, note that

$$
\pi\left(\mu_{0}+\Delta \mid \delta\right)=\Phi\left(-z_{\alpha / 2}+\frac{\sqrt{n} \Delta}{\sigma}\right)+\Phi\left(-z_{\alpha / 2}-\frac{\sqrt{n} \Delta}{\sigma}\right)
$$

Check that you get the same expression for $\pi\left(\mu_{0}-\Delta \mid \delta\right)$.

Exercise: What happens when $\sigma>0$ is unknown?
We can rewrite $U_{n}$ as

$$
U_{n}=\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\mu_{0}\right) / \sigma}{s_{n} / \sigma},
$$

- The numerator has the normal distribution with mean $\sqrt{n}\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right) / \sigma$ and variance 1 .
- The denominator is the square-root of a $\chi^{2}$-random variable divided by its degrees of freedom, $n-1$.
- When the mean of the numerator is not $0, U_{n}$ has a non-central $t$-distribution.

Definition 20 (Noncentral $t$-distributions). Let $W$ and $Y_{m}$ be independent random variables $W \sim \mathcal{N}(\psi, 1)$ and $Y \sim \chi_{m}^{2}$. Then the distribution of

$$
X:=\frac{W}{\sqrt{Y_{m} / m}}
$$

is called the non-central $t$-distribution with $m$ degrees of freedom and non-centrality parameter $\psi$. We define

$$
T_{m}(t \mid \psi)=\mathbb{P}(X \leq t)
$$

as the c.d.f of this distribution.

- The non-central $t$-distribution with $m$ degrees of freedom and non-centrality parameter $\psi=0$ is also the $t$-distribution with $m$ degrees of freedom.
- The distribution of the statistic $U_{n}$ in (11) is the non-central $t$-distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom and non-centrality parameter

$$
\psi:=\sqrt{n} \frac{\left(\mu-\mu_{0}\right)}{\sigma} .
$$

- The power function of $\delta$ (see Figure 9.14) is

$$
\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=T_{n-1}(-c \mid \psi)+1-T_{n-1}(c \mid \psi)
$$

where $c:=T_{n-1}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0} / 2\right)$.

Exercise: Prove this result.

### 10.8.2 One-sided alternatives

We consider testing the following hypotheses:

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \mu \leq \mu_{0}, \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu>\mu_{0} \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

- When $\mu=\mu_{0}, U_{n} \sim t_{n-1}$, regardless of the value of $\sigma^{2}$.
- The test rejects $H_{0}$ if

$$
U_{n} \geq c,
$$

where $c:=T_{n-1}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0}\right)$ (the $\left(1-\alpha_{0}\right)$-quantile) of the $t$-distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom.

- $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=1-T_{n-1}(c \mid \psi)$.


## Power function of the $t$-test

Let $\delta$ be the test that rejects $H_{0}$ in (12) if $U_{n} \geq c$.
The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (12) is $1-T_{n-1}(u)$, where $u$ is the observed value of the statistic $U_{n}$.

The power function $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)$ has the following properties:

1. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu=\mu_{0}$,
2. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)<\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu<\mu_{0}$,
3. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)>\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu>\mu_{0}$,
4. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right) \rightarrow 0$ as $\mu \rightarrow-\infty$,
5. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right) \rightarrow 1$ as $\mu \rightarrow \infty$,
6. $\sup _{\theta \in \Omega_{0}} \pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\alpha_{0}$.

When we want to test

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \mu \geq \mu_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu<\mu_{0} \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

the test rejects $H_{0}$ if $U_{n} \leq c$, where $c=T_{n-1}^{-1}\left(\alpha_{0}\right)$ (the $\alpha_{0}$-quantile) of the $t$-distribution with $n-1$ degrees of freedom.

## Power function of the $t$ test

Let $\delta$ be the test that rejects $H_{0}$ in (13) if $U_{n} \leq c$.
The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (13) is $T_{n-1}(u)$. Observe that $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=T_{n-1}(c \mid \psi)$. The power function $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)$ has the following properties:

1. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu=\mu_{0}$,
2. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)>\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu<\mu_{0}$,
3. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)<\alpha_{0}$ when $\mu>\mu_{0}$,
4. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right) \rightarrow 1$ as $\mu \rightarrow-\infty$,
5. $\pi\left(\mu, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right) \rightarrow 0$ as $\mu \rightarrow \infty$,
6. $\sup _{\theta \in \Omega_{0}} \pi(\theta \mid \delta)=\alpha_{0}$.

### 10.9 Comparing the means of two normal distributions (twosample $t$ test)

### 10.9.1 One-sided alternatives

Random samples are available from two normal distributions with common unknown variance $\sigma^{2}$, and it is desired to determine which distribution has the larger mean. Specifically,

- $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right)$ random sample of $m$ observations from a normal distribution for which both the mean $\mu_{1}$ and the variance $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown, and
- $\mathbf{Y}=\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)$ form an independent random sample of $n$ observations from another normal distribution for which both the mean $\mu_{2}$ and the variance $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown.
- We shall assume that the variance $\sigma^{2}$ is the same for both distributions, even though the value of $\sigma^{2}$ is unknown.

If we are interested in testing hypotheses such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \mu_{1} \leq \mu_{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu_{1}>\mu_{2} \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

We reject $H_{0}$ in (14) if the difference between the sample means is large. For all values of $\theta=\left(\mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ such that $\mu_{1}=\mu_{2}$, the test statistics

$$
U_{m, n}=\frac{\sqrt{m+n-2}\left(\bar{X}_{m}-\bar{Y}_{n}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{m}+\frac{1}{n}\right)\left(S_{X}^{2}+S_{Y}^{2}\right)}}
$$

follows the $t$-distribution with $m+n-2$ degrees of freedom, where

$$
S_{X}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{m}\right)^{2}, \quad \text { and } \quad S_{Y}^{2}=\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(Y_{j}-\bar{Y}_{n}\right)^{2}
$$

We reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
U_{m, n} \geq T_{m+n-2}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0}\right)
$$

The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (14) is $1-T_{m+n-2}(u)$, where $u$ is the observed value of the statistic $U_{m, n}$.

If we are interested in testing hypotheses such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \mu_{1} \geq \mu_{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu_{1}<\mu_{2} \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

we reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
U_{m, n} \leq-T_{m+n-2}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0}\right)=T_{m+n-2}^{-1}\left(\alpha_{0}\right)
$$

The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (15) is $T_{m+n-2}(u)$, where $u$ is the observed value of the statistic $U_{m, n}$.

### 10.9.2 Two-sided alternatives

If we are interested in testing hypotheses such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \mu_{1}=\mu_{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu_{1} \neq \mu_{2} \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

we reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
\left|U_{m, n}\right| \geq T_{m+n-2}^{-1}\left(1-\frac{\alpha_{0}}{2}\right) .
$$

The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (16) is $2\left[1-T_{m+n-2}(|u|)\right]$, where $u$ is the observed value of the statistic $U_{m, n}$.

The power function of the two-sided two-sample $t$ test is based on the non-central $t$-distribution in the same way as was the power function of the one-sample two-sided $t$-test. The test $\delta$ that rejects $H_{0}$ when $\left|U_{m, n}\right| \geq c$ has power function

$$
\pi\left(\mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \sigma^{2} \mid \delta\right)=T_{m+n-2}(-c \mid \psi)+1-T_{m+n-2}(c \mid \psi)
$$

where $T_{m+n-2}(\cdot \mid \psi)$ is the c.d.f of the non-central $t$-distribution with $m+n-2$ degrees of freedom and non-centrality parameter $\psi$ given by

$$
\psi=\frac{\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}}{\sqrt{\sigma^{2}\left(\frac{1}{m}+\frac{1}{n}\right)}}
$$

### 10.10 Comparing the variances of two normal distributions ( $F$-test)

- $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right)$ random sample of $m$ observations from a normal distribution for which both the mean $\mu_{1}$ and the variance $\sigma_{1}^{2}$ are unknown, and
- $\mathbf{Y}=\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)$ form an independent random sample of $n$ observations from another normal distribution for which both the mean $\mu_{2}$ and the variance $\sigma_{2}^{2}$ are unknown.

Suppose that we want to test the hypothesis of equality of the population variances, i.e., $H_{0}: \sigma_{1}^{2}=\sigma_{2}^{2}$.

Definition 21 ( $F$-distribution). Let $Y$ and $W$ be independent random variables such that $Y \sim \chi_{m}^{2}$ and $W \sim \chi_{n}^{2}$. Then the distribution of

$$
X=\frac{Y / m}{W / n}
$$

is called the $F$-distribution with $m$ and $n$ degrees of freedom.

The test statistic

$$
V_{m, n}^{*}=\frac{\frac{S_{X}^{2}}{\sigma_{1}^{2}} /(m-1)}{\frac{S_{Y}^{2}}{\sigma_{2}^{2}} /(n-1)}=\frac{\sigma_{2}^{2} S_{X}^{2} /(m-1)}{\sigma_{1}^{2} S_{Y}^{2} /(n-1)}
$$

follows the $F$-distribution with $m-1$ and $n-1$ degrees of freedom. In particular, if $\sigma_{1}^{2}=\sigma_{2}^{2}$, then the distribution of

$$
V_{m, n}=\frac{S_{X}^{2} /(m-1)}{S_{Y}^{2} /(n-1)}
$$

is the $F$-distribution with $m-1$ and $n-1$ degrees of freedom.

Let $\nu$ be the observed value of the statistic $V_{m, n}$ below, and let $G_{m-1, n-1}(\cdot)$ be the c.d.f of the $F$-distribution with $m-1$ and $n-1$ degrees of freedom.

### 10.10.1 One-sided alternatives

If we are interested in testing hypotheses such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \quad \sigma_{1}^{2} \leq \sigma_{2}^{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \sigma_{1}^{2}>\sigma_{2}^{2} \tag{17}
\end{equation*}
$$

we reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
V_{m, n} \geq G_{m-1, n-1}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0}\right)
$$

The $p$-value for the hypotheses in (17) when $V_{m, n}=\nu$ is observed equals $1-$ $G_{m-1, n-1}(\nu)$.

### 10.10.2 Two-sided alternatives

If we are interested in testing hypotheses such as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \quad \sigma_{1}^{2}=\sigma_{2}^{2}, \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \quad \sigma_{1}^{2} \neq \sigma_{2}^{2} \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

we reject $H_{0}$ if either $V_{m, n} \leq c_{1}$ or $V_{m, n} \geq c_{2}$, where $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are constants such that

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(V_{m, n} \leq c_{1}\right)+\mathbb{P}\left(V_{m, n} \geq c_{2}\right)=\alpha_{0}
$$

when $\sigma_{1}^{2}=\sigma_{2}^{2}$. The most convenient choice of $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ is the one that makes

$$
\mathbb{P}\left(V_{m, n} \leq c_{1}\right)=\mathbb{P}\left(V_{m, n} \geq c_{2}\right)=\frac{\alpha_{0}}{2}
$$

that is,

$$
c_{1}=G_{m-1, n-1}^{-1}\left(\alpha_{0} / 2\right) \quad \text { and } \quad c_{2}=G_{m-1, n-1}^{-1}\left(1-\alpha_{0} / 2\right)
$$

### 10.11 Likelihood ratio test

A very popular form of hypothesis test is the likelihood ratio test.
Suppose that we want to test

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \theta \in \Omega_{0}, \quad \text { and } \quad H_{1}: \theta \in \Omega_{1} \tag{19}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to compare these two hypotheses, we might wish to see whether the likelihood function is higher on $\Omega_{0}$ or on $\Omega_{1}$.

The likelihood ratio statistic is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda(\mathbf{X})=\frac{\sup _{\theta \in \Omega_{0}} L_{n}(\theta, \mathbf{X})}{\sup _{\theta \in \Omega} L_{n}(\theta, \mathbf{X})} \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Omega=\Omega_{0} \cup \Omega_{1}$.
A likelihood ratio test of the hypotheses (19) rejects $H_{0}$ when

$$
\Lambda(\mathbf{x}) \leq k
$$

for some constant $k$.
Interpretation: we reject $H_{0}$ if the likelihood function on $\Omega_{0}$ is sufficiently small compared to the likelihood function on all of $\Omega$.

Generally, $k$ is to be chosen so that the test has a desired level $\alpha_{0}$.

Exercise: Suppose that $\mathbf{X}_{n}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is a random sample from a normal distribution with unknown mean $\mu$ and known variance $\sigma^{2}$. We wish to test the hypotheses

$$
H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{a}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}
$$

at the level $\alpha_{0}$. Show that the likelihood ratio test is equivalent to the $z$-test.

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ from a normal distribution $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where both $\mu$ and $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown. We wish to test the hypotheses

$$
H_{0}: \sigma^{2}=\sigma_{0}^{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{a}: \sigma^{2} \neq \sigma_{0}^{2}
$$

at the level $\alpha$. Show that the likelihood ratio test is equivalent to the $\chi^{2}$-test. [Hint: Show that $\Lambda\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)=e^{n / 2}\left(\frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\sigma_{0}^{2}}\right)^{n / 2} \exp \left(-\frac{n}{2} \frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\sigma_{0}^{2}}\right)$ where $\hat{\sigma}^{2}=n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$. Note that as $\Lambda\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)$ is a function of $\frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\sigma_{0}^{2}}$, the inequality $\Lambda\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right) \leq c$ holds if and only if $\frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\sigma_{0}^{2}}$ is too big or too small; show this plotting the graph of $\log x-x$.]

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ from a normal distribution $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where both $\mu$ and $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown. We wish to test the hypotheses

$$
H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{a}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}
$$

at the level $\alpha$. Show that the likelihood ratio test is equivalent to the $t$-test [Hint: Show that $\Lambda\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)=\left(\frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\hat{\sigma}_{0}^{2}}\right)^{n / 2}$ where $\hat{\sigma}^{2}=n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$ and $\hat{\sigma}_{0}^{2}=n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\right.$ $\left.\mu_{0}\right)^{2}$. Thus, $\Lambda\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right) \leq c \Leftrightarrow\left(\bar{X}_{n}-\mu_{0}\right)^{2} / s^{2} \geq c^{\prime}$, for a suitable $c^{\prime}$ where $s^{2}=(n-$ $1)^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}_{n}\right)^{2}$.]

Theorem 10.2. Let $\Omega$ be a open set of a p-dimensional space, and suppose that $H_{0}$ specifies that $k$ coordinates of $\theta$ are equal to $k$ specific values. Assume that $H_{0}$ is true and that the likelihood function satisfies the conditions needed to prove that the MLE is asymptotically normal and asymptotically efficient. Then, as $n \rightarrow \infty$,

$$
-2 \log \Lambda(\mathbf{X}) \xrightarrow{d} \chi_{k}^{2}
$$

Exercise: Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be a random sample from the p.d.f

$$
f_{\theta}(x)=e^{-(x-\theta)} \mathbf{1}_{[\theta, \infty)}(x)
$$

Consider testing $H_{0}: \theta \leq \theta_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \theta>\theta_{0}$, where $\theta_{0}$ is a fixed value specified by the experimenter.

Show that the likelihood ratio test statistic is

$$
\Lambda(\boldsymbol{X})= \begin{cases}1 & X_{(1)} \leq \theta_{0} \\ e^{-n\left(X_{(1)}-\theta_{0}\right)} & X_{(1)}>\theta_{0}\end{cases}
$$

### 10.12 Equivalence of tests and confidence sets

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$ where $\mu$ is unknown and $\sigma^{2}$ is known.

We now illustrate how the testing procedure ties up naturally with the CI construction problem.

Consider testing $H_{0}: \mu=\mu_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \mu \neq \mu_{0}$.
First note that the acceptance region of the derived test $\delta$ can be written as:

$$
S_{0}=\mathcal{A}_{\mu_{0}}=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right): \bar{x}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2} \leq \mu_{0} \leq \bar{x}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2}\right\}
$$

Now, consider a fixed data set $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and based on this consider testing a family of null hypotheses:

$$
\left\{H_{0, \tilde{\mu}}: \mu=\tilde{\mu}: \tilde{\mu} \in \mathbb{R}\right\} .
$$

We can now ask the following question: Based on the observed data and the above testing procedure, what values of $\tilde{\mu}$ would fail to be rejected by the level $\alpha_{0}$ test? This means that $\tilde{\mu}$ would have to fall in the interval

$$
\bar{X}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2} \leq \tilde{\mu} \leq \bar{X}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2} .
$$

Thus, the set of $\tilde{\mu}$ 's for which the null hypothesis would fail to be rejected by the level $\alpha_{0}$ test is the set:

$$
\left[\bar{X}-\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2}, \bar{X}+\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} z_{\alpha_{0} / 2}\right] .
$$

But this is precisely the level $1-\alpha_{0}$ CI that we obtained before!
Thus, we obtain a level $1-\alpha_{0}$ CI for $\mu$, the population mean, by compiling all possible $\tilde{\mu}$ 's for which the null hypothesis $H_{0, \tilde{\mu}}: \mu=\tilde{\mu}$ fails to be rejected by the level $\alpha_{0}$ test.

From hypothesis testing to CIs: Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d observations from some underlying distribution $F_{\theta}$; here $\theta$ is a "parameter" indexing a family of distributions. The goal is to construct a CI for $\theta$ using hypothesis testing.
For each $\tilde{\theta}$ consider testing the null hypothesis $H_{0, \tilde{\theta}}: \theta=\tilde{\theta}$. Suppose, there exists a level $\alpha_{0}$ test $\delta_{\tilde{\theta}}(\boldsymbol{X})$ for this problem with

$$
\mathcal{A}_{\tilde{\theta}}=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}: T_{\tilde{\theta}}(\boldsymbol{x}) \leq c_{\alpha_{0}}\right\}
$$

being the acceptance region of $\delta_{\tilde{\theta}}$ and

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\tilde{\theta}}\left(\boldsymbol{X} \in \mathcal{A}_{\tilde{\theta}}\right) \geq 1-\alpha_{0} .
$$

Then a level $1-\alpha$ confidence set for $\theta$ is:

$$
\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X})=\left\{\tilde{\theta}: \boldsymbol{X} \in \mathcal{A}_{\tilde{\theta}}\right\} .
$$

We need to verify that for any $\theta$,

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}[\theta \in \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X})] \geq 1-\alpha
$$

But

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta}(\theta \in \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X}))=\mathbb{P}_{\theta}\left(\boldsymbol{X} \in \mathcal{A}_{\theta}\right) \geq 1-\alpha_{0}
$$

Theorem 10.3. For each $\theta_{0} \in \Omega$, let $\mathcal{A}\left(\theta_{0}\right)$ be the acceptance region of a level $\alpha$ test of $H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0}$. For each $\boldsymbol{x} \in \mathcal{X}(\mathcal{X}$ is the space of all data values), define a set $\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{x})$ in the parameter space by

$$
\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{x})=\left\{\theta_{0}: \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathcal{A}\left(\theta_{0}\right)\right\} .
$$

Then the random set $\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X})$ is a $1-\alpha$ confidence set. Conversely, let $\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X})$ be a $1-\alpha$ confidence set. For any $\theta_{0} \in \Omega$, define

$$
\mathcal{A}\left(\theta_{0}\right)=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}: \theta_{0} \in \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\} .
$$

Then $\mathcal{A}\left(\theta_{0}\right)$ is the acceptance region of a level $\alpha$ test of $H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0}$.

Proof. The first part is essentially done above!
For the second part, the type I error probability for the test of $H_{0}: \theta=\theta_{0}$ with acceptance region $\mathcal{A}\left(\theta_{0}\right)$ is

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\theta_{0}}\left(\boldsymbol{X} \notin \mathcal{A}_{\theta_{0}}\right)=\mathbb{P}_{\theta_{0}}\left[\theta_{0} \notin \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{X})\right] \leq \alpha
$$

Remark: The more useful part of the theorem is the first part, i.e., given a level $\alpha$ test (which is usually easy to construct) we can get a confidence set by inverting the family of tests.

Example: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ are i.i.d $\operatorname{Exp}(\lambda)$. We want to test $H_{0}: \lambda=\lambda_{0}$ versus $H_{1}: \lambda \neq \lambda_{0}$.

Find the LRT.
The acceptance region is given by

$$
\mathcal{A}\left(\lambda_{0}\right)=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}:\left(\frac{\sum x_{i}}{\lambda_{0}}\right)^{n} e^{-\sum x_{i} / \lambda_{0}} \geq k^{*}\right\}
$$

where $k^{*}$ is a constant chosen to satisfy

$$
\mathbb{P}_{\lambda_{0}}\left(\boldsymbol{X} \in \mathcal{A}\left(\lambda_{0}\right)\right)=1-\alpha .
$$

Inverting this acceptance region gives the $1-\alpha$ confidence set

$$
\mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{x})=\left\{\lambda:\left(\frac{\sum x_{i}}{\lambda}\right)^{n} e^{-\sum x_{i} / \lambda_{0}} \geq k^{*}\right\} .
$$

This can be shown to be an interval in the parameter space.

## 11 Linear regression

- We are often interested in understanding the relationship between two or more variables.
- Want to model a functional relationship between a "predictor" (input, independent variable) and a "response" variable (output, dependent variable, etc.).
- But real world is noisy, no $f=m a$ (Force $=$ mass $\times$ acceleration). We have observation noise, weak relationship, etc.


## Examples:

- How is the sales price of a house related to its size, number of rooms and property tax?
- How does the probability of surviving a particular surgery change as a function of the patient's age and general health condition?
- How does the weight of an individual depend on his/her height?


### 11.1 Method of least squares

Suppose that we have $n$ data points $\left(x_{1}, Y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}, Y_{n}\right)$. We want to predict $Y$ given a value of $x$.

- $Y_{i}$ is the value of the response variable for the $i$-th observation.
- $x_{i}$ is the value of the predictor (covariate/explanatory variable) for the $i$-th observation.
- Scatter plot: Plot the data and try to visualize the relationship.
- Suppose that we think that $Y$ is a linear function (actually here a more appropriate term is "affine") of $x$, i.e.,

$$
Y_{i} \approx \beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}
$$

and we want to find the "best" such linear function.

- For the correct parameter values $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$, the deviation of the observed values to its expected value, i.e.,

$$
Y_{i}-\beta_{0}-\beta_{1} x_{i},
$$

should be small.

- We try to minimize the sum of the $n$ squared deviations, i.e., we can try to minimize

$$
Q\left(b_{0}, b_{1}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-b_{0}-b_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2}
$$

as a function of $b_{0}$ and $b_{1}$. In other words, we want to minimize the sum of the squares of the vertical deviations of all the points from the line.

- The least squares estimators can be found by differentiating $Q$ with respect to $b_{0}$ and $b_{1}$ and setting the partial derivatives equal to 0 .
- Find $b_{0}$ and $b_{1}$ that solve:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial Q}{\partial b_{0}}=-2 \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-b_{0}-b_{1} x_{i}\right)=0 \\
& \frac{\partial Q}{\partial b_{1}}=-2 \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}\left(Y_{i}-b_{0}-b_{1} x_{i}\right)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

### 11.1.1 Normal equations

- The values of $b_{0}$ and $b_{1}$ that minimize $Q$ are given by the solution to the normal equations:

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i} & =n b_{0}+b_{1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}  \tag{21}\\
\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} Y_{i} & =b_{0} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}+b_{1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2} \tag{22}
\end{align*}
$$

- Solving the normal equations gives us the following point estimates:

$$
\begin{align*}
b_{1} & =\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right) Y_{i}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}},  \tag{23}\\
b_{0} & =\bar{Y}-b_{1} \bar{x} \tag{24}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{x}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} / n$ and $\bar{Y}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i} / n$.

In general, if we can parametrize the form of the functional dependence between $Y$ and $x$ in a linear fashion (linear in the parameters), then the method of least squares can be used to estimate the function. For example,

$$
Y_{i} \approx \beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}+\beta_{2} x_{i}^{2}
$$

is still linear in the parameters.

### 11.2 Simple linear regression

The model for simple linear regression can be stated as follows:

$$
Y_{i}=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}+\epsilon_{i}, \quad i=1, \ldots, n .
$$

- Observations: $\left\{\left(x_{i}, Y_{i}\right): i=1, \ldots, n\right\}$.
- $\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}$ and $\sigma^{2}$ are unknown parameters.
- $\epsilon_{i}$ is a (unobserved) random error term whose distribution is unspecified:

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\epsilon_{i}\right)=0, \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(\epsilon_{i}\right)=\sigma^{2}, \quad \operatorname{Cov}\left(\epsilon_{i}, \epsilon_{j}\right)=0 \quad \text { for } i \neq j
$$

- $x_{i}$ 's will be treated as known constants. Even if the $x_{i}$ 's are random, we condition on the predictors and want to understand the conditional distribution of $Y$ given $X$.
- Regression function: Conditional mean on $Y$ given $x$, i.e.,

$$
m(x):=\mathbb{E}(Y \mid x)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x
$$

- The regression function shows how the mean of $Y$ changes as a function of $x$.
- $\mathbb{E}\left(Y_{i}\right)=\mathbb{E}\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}+\epsilon_{i}\right)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}$
- $\operatorname{Var}\left(Y_{i}\right)=\operatorname{Var}\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}+\epsilon_{i}\right)=\operatorname{Var}\left(\epsilon_{i}\right)=\sigma^{2}$.


### 11.2.1 Interpretation

- The slope $\beta_{1}$ has units " y -units per x -units".
- For every 1 inch increase in height, the model predicts a $\beta_{1}$ pounds increase in the mean weight.
- The intercept term $\beta_{0}$ is not always meaningful.
- The model is only valid for values of the explanatory variable in the domain of the data.


### 11.2.2 Estimated regression function

- After formulating the model we use the observed data to estimate the unknown parameters.
- Three unknown parameters: $\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}$ and $\sigma^{2}$.
- We are interested in finding the estimates of these parameters that best fit the data.
- Question: Best in what sense?
- The least squares estimators of $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ are those values $b_{0}$ and $b_{1}$ that minimize:

$$
Q\left(b_{0}, b_{1}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-b_{0}-b_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2} .
$$

- Solving the normal equations gives us the following point estimates:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \hat{\beta}_{1}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right) Y_{i}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}},  \tag{25}\\
& \hat{\beta}_{0}=\bar{Y}-\hat{\beta}_{1} \bar{x} \tag{26}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{x}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} / n$ and $\bar{Y}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i} / n$.

- We estimate the regression function:

$$
\mathbb{E}(Y)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x
$$

using

$$
\hat{Y}=\hat{\beta}_{0}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x
$$

- The term

$$
\hat{Y}_{i}=\hat{\beta}_{0}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{i}, \quad i=1, \ldots, n,
$$

is called the fitted or predicted value for the $i$-th observation, while $Y_{i}$ is the observed value.

- The residual, denoted $e_{i}$, is the difference between the observed and the predicted value of $Y_{i}$, i.e.,

$$
e_{i}=Y_{i}-\hat{Y}_{i} .
$$

- The residuals show how far the individual data points fall from the regression function.


### 11.2.3 Properties

1. The sum of the residuals $\sum_{i=1}^{n} e_{i}$ is zero.
2. The sum of the squared residuals is a minimum.
3. The sum of the observed values equal the sum of the predicted values, i.e., $\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \hat{Y}_{i}$.
4. The following sums of weighted residuals are equal to zero:

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} e_{i}=0 \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} e_{i}=0
$$

5. The regression line always passes through the point $(\bar{x}, Y)$.

### 11.2.4 Estimation of $\sigma^{2}$

- Recall: $\sigma^{2}=\operatorname{Var}\left(\epsilon_{i}\right)$.
- We might have used $\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\epsilon_{i}-\bar{\epsilon}\right)^{2}}{n-1}$. But $\epsilon_{i}$ 's are not observed!
- Idea: Use $e_{i}$ 's, i.e., $s^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(e_{i}-\bar{e}\right)^{2}}{n-2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} e_{i}^{2}}{n-2}$.
- The divisor $n-2$ in $s^{2}$ is the number of degrees of freedom associated with the estimate.
- To obtain $s^{2}$, the two parameters $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ must first be estimated, which results in a loss of two degrees of freedom.
- Using $n-2$ makes $s^{2}$ an unbiased estimator of $\sigma^{2}$, i.e., $\mathbb{E}\left(s^{2}\right)=\sigma^{2}$.


### 11.2.5 Gauss-Markov theorem

The least squares estimators $\hat{\beta}_{0}, \hat{\beta}_{1}$ are unbiased (why?), i.e.,

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}\right)=\beta_{0}, \quad \mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\beta_{1} .
$$

A linear estimator of $\beta_{j}(j=0,1)$ is an estimator of the form

$$
\tilde{\beta}_{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{i} Y_{i},
$$

where the coefficients $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}$ are only allowed to depend on $x_{i}$.

Note that $\hat{\beta}_{0}, \hat{\beta}_{1}$ are linear estimators (show this!).
Result: No matter what the distribution of the error terms $\epsilon_{i}$, the least squares method provides unbiased point estimates that have minimum variance among all unbiased linear estimators.

The Gauss-Markov theorem states that in a linear regression model in which the errors have expectation zero and are uncorrelated and have equal variances, the best linear unbiased estimator (BLUE) of the coefficients is given by the ordinary least squares estimators.

### 11.3 Normal simple linear regression

To perform inference we need to make assumptions regarding the distribution of $\epsilon_{i}$.
We often assume that $\epsilon_{i}$ 's are normally distributed.
The normal error version of the model for simple linear regression can be written:

$$
Y_{i}=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}+\epsilon_{i}, \quad i=1, \ldots, n .
$$

Here $\epsilon_{i}$ 's are independent $N\left(0, \sigma^{2}\right), \sigma^{2}$ unknown.
Hence, $Y_{i}$ 's are independent normal random variables with mean $\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$.

Picture?

### 11.3.1 Maximum likelihood estimation

When the probability distribution of $Y_{i}$ is specified, the estimates can be obtained using the method of maximum likelihood.

This method chooses as estimates those values of the parameter that are most consistent with the observed data.

The likelihood is the joint density of the $Y_{i}$ 's viewed as a function of the unknown parameters, which we denote $L\left(\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}\right)$.

Since the $Y_{i}$ 's are independent this is simply the product of the density of individual $Y_{i}$ 's.

We seek the values of $\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}$ and $\sigma^{2}$ that maximize $L\left(\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ for the given $x$ and $Y$ values in the sample.

According to our model:

$$
Y_{i} \sim N\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{i}, \sigma^{2}\right), \quad \text { for } i=1,2, \ldots, n
$$

The likelihood function for the $n$ independent observations $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}$ is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
L\left(\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}\right) & =\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \sigma^{2}}} \exp \left\{-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}}\left(Y_{i}-\beta_{0}-\beta_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2}\right\}  \tag{27}\\
& =\frac{1}{\left(2 \pi \sigma^{2}\right)^{n / 2}} \exp \left\{-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\beta_{0}-\beta_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2}\right\}
\end{align*}
$$

The value of $\left(\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ that maximizes the likelihood function are called maximum likelihood estimates (MLEs).

The MLE of $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ are identical to the ones obtained using the method of least squares, i.e.,

$$
\hat{\beta}_{0}=\bar{Y}-\hat{\beta}_{1} \bar{x}, \quad \hat{\beta}_{1}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right) Y_{i}}{S_{x}^{2}}
$$

where $S_{x}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}$.
The MLE of $\sigma^{2}: \hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{Y}_{i}\right)^{2}}{n}$.

### 11.3.2 Inference

Our model describes the linear relationship between the two variables $x$ and $Y$.
Different samples from the same population will produce different point estimates of $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$.
Hence, $\hat{\beta}_{0}$ and $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ are random variables with sampling distributions that describe what values they can take and how often they take them.

Hypothesis tests about $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ can be constructed using these distributions.
The next step is to perform inference, including:

- Tests and confidence intervals for the slope and intercept.
- Confidence intervals for the mean response.
- Prediction intervals for new observations.

Theorem 11.1. Under the assumptions of the normal linear model,

$$
\binom{\hat{\beta}_{0}}{\hat{\beta}_{1}} \sim N_{2}\left(\binom{\beta_{0}}{\beta_{1}}, \sigma^{2}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\bar{x}^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}} & -\frac{\bar{x}}{S_{x}^{2}} \\
-\frac{\bar{x}}{S_{x}^{2}} & \frac{1}{S_{x}^{2}}
\end{array}\right)\right)
$$

where $S_{x}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}$. Also, if $n \geq 3$, $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ is independent of $\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}, \hat{\beta}_{1}\right)$ and $n \hat{\sigma}^{2} / \sigma^{2}$ has a $\chi^{2}$-distribution with $n-2$ degrees of freedom.

Note that if the $x_{i}$ 's are random, the above theorem is still valid if we condition on the values of the predictor $x_{i}$ 's.
Exercise: Compute the variances and covariance of $\hat{\beta}_{0}, \hat{\beta}_{1}$.

### 11.3.3 Inference about $\beta_{1}$

We often want to perform tests about the slope:

$$
H_{0}: \beta_{1}=0 \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \beta_{1} \neq 0
$$

Under the null hypothesis there is no linear relationship between $Y$ and $x$ - the means of probability distributions of $Y$ are equal at all levels of $x$, i.e., $\mathbb{E}(Y \mid x)=\beta_{0}$, for all $x$.

The sampling distribution of $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ is given by

$$
\hat{\beta}_{1} \sim N\left(\beta_{1}, \frac{\sigma^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right)
$$

Need to show that: $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ is normally distributed,

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\beta_{1}, \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\frac{\sigma^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}
$$

Result: When $Z_{1}, \ldots, Z_{k}$ are independent normal random variables, the linear combination

$$
a_{1} Z_{1}+\ldots+a_{k} Z_{k}
$$

is also normally distributed.
Since $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ is a linear combination of the $Y_{i}$ 's and each $Y_{i}$ is an independent normally distributed random variable, then $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ is also normally distributed.

We can write $\hat{\beta}_{1}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i} Y_{i}$ where

$$
w_{i}=\frac{x_{i}-\bar{x}}{S_{x}^{2}}, \quad \text { for } i=1, \ldots, n
$$

Thus,

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i}=0, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} w_{i}=1, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i}^{2}=\frac{1}{S_{x}^{2}}
$$

- Variance for the estimated slope: There are three aspects of the scatter plot that affect the variance of the regression slope:
- The spread around the regression line $\left(\sigma^{2}\right)$ - less scatter around the line means the slope will be more consistent from sample to sample.
- The spread of the $x$ values $\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{i}-\bar{x}\right)^{2} / n\right)$ - a large variance of $x$ provides a more stable regression.
- The sample size $n$ - having a larger sample size $n$, gives more consistent estimates.
- Estimated variance: When $\sigma^{2}$ is unknown we replace it with the

$$
\tilde{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{Y}_{i}\right)^{2}}{n-2}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} e_{i}^{2}}{n-2}
$$

Plugging this into the equation for $\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)$ we get

$$
s e^{2}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\frac{\tilde{\sigma}^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}
$$

Recall: Standard error $\operatorname{se}(\hat{\theta})$ of an estimator $\hat{\theta}$ is used to refer to an estimate of its standard deviation.
Result: For the normal error regression model:

$$
\frac{S S E}{\sigma^{2}}=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{Y}_{i}\right)^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \sim \chi_{n-2}^{2}
$$

and is independent of $\hat{\beta}_{0}$ and $\hat{\beta}_{1}$.

- (Studentized statistic:) Since $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ is normally distributed, the standardized statistic:

$$
\frac{\hat{\beta}_{1}-\beta_{1}}{\sqrt{\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)}} \sim N(0,1)
$$

If we replace $\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)$ by its estimate we get the studentized statistic:

$$
\frac{\hat{\beta}_{1}-\beta_{1}}{\operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)} \sim t_{n-2}
$$

Recall: Suppose that $Z \sim N(0,1)$ and $W \sim \chi_{p}^{2}$ where $Z$ and $W$ are independent. Then,

$$
\frac{Z}{\sqrt{W / p}} \sim t_{p}
$$

the $t$-distribution with $p$ degrees of freedom.

- Hypothesis testing: To test

$$
H_{0}: \beta_{1}=0 \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{a}: \beta_{1} \neq 0
$$

use the test-statistic

$$
T=\frac{\hat{\beta}_{1}}{\operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)}
$$

We reject $H_{0}$ when the observed value of $|T|$ i.e., $\left|t_{\text {obs }}\right|$, is large!
Thus, given level $(1-\alpha)$, we reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
\left|t_{o b s}\right|>t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2}
$$

where $t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2}$ denotes the $(1-\alpha / 2)$-quantile of the $t_{n-2}$-distribution, i.e.,

$$
1-\frac{\alpha}{2}=\mathbb{P}\left(T \leq t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2}\right)
$$

- $P$-value: $p$-value is the probability of obtaining a test statistic at least as extreme as the one that was actually observed, assuming that the null hypothesis is true.
The $p$-value depends on $H_{1}$ (one-sided/two-sided).
In our case, we compute $p$-values using a $t_{n-2}$-distribution. Thus,

$$
p \text {-value }=\mathbb{P}_{H_{0}}\left(|T|>\left|t_{o b s}\right|\right)
$$

If we know the $p$-value then we can decide to accept/reject $H_{0}$ (versus $H_{1}$ ) at any given $\alpha$.

- Confidence interval: A confidence interval (CI) is a kind of interval estimator of a population parameter and is used to indicate the reliability of an estimator. Using the sampling distribution of $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ we can make the following probability statement:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{P}\left(t_{\alpha / 2, n-2} \leq \frac{\hat{\beta}_{1}-\beta_{1}}{\operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)} \leq t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2}\right) & =1-\alpha \\
\mathbb{P}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}-t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2} \operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right) \leq \beta_{1} \leq \hat{\beta}_{1}-t_{\alpha / 2, n-2} \operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)\right) & =1-\alpha
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $\mathrm{a}(1-\alpha)$ confidence interval for $\beta_{1}$ is

$$
\left[\hat{\beta}_{1}-t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2} \cdot \operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right), \hat{\beta}_{1}+t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2} \cdot \operatorname{se}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)\right]
$$

as $t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2}=-t_{\alpha / 2, n-2}$.

### 11.3.4 Sampling distribution of $\hat{\beta}_{0}$

The sampling distribution of $\hat{\beta}_{0}$ is

$$
N\left(\beta_{0}, \sigma^{2}\left(\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\bar{x}^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right)\right)
$$

Verify at home using the same procedure as used for $\hat{\beta}_{1}$.

Hypothesis testing: In general, let $c_{0}, c_{1}$ and $c_{*}$ be specified numbers, where at least one of $c_{0}$ and $c_{1}$ is nonzero. Suppose that we are interested in testing the following hypotheses:

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: c_{o} \beta_{0}+c_{1} \beta_{1}=c_{*}, \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{0}: c_{o} \beta_{0}+c_{1} \beta_{1} \neq c_{*} . \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

We should use a scalar multiple of

$$
c_{0} \hat{\beta}_{0}+c_{1} \hat{\beta}_{1}-c_{*}
$$

as the test statistic. Specifically, we use

$$
U_{01}=\left[\frac{c_{0}^{2}}{n}+\frac{\left(c_{0} \bar{x}-c_{1}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right]^{-1 / 2}\left(\frac{c_{0} \hat{\beta}_{0}+c_{1} \hat{\beta}_{1}-c_{*}}{\tilde{\sigma}}\right)
$$

where

$$
\tilde{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{S^{2}}{n-2}, \quad S^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{\beta}_{0}-\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} e_{i}^{2} .
$$

Note that $\tilde{\sigma}^{2}$ is an unbiased estimator of $\sigma^{2}$.
For each $\alpha \in(0,1)$, a level $\alpha$ test of the hypothesis (28) is to reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
\left|U_{01}\right|>T_{n-2}^{-1}\left(1-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)
$$

The above result follows from the fact that $c_{0} \hat{\beta}_{0}+c_{1} \hat{\beta}_{1}-c_{*}$ is normally distributed with mean $c_{0} \beta_{0}+c_{1} \beta_{1}-c_{*}$ and variance

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Var}\left(c_{0} \hat{\beta}_{0}+c_{1} \hat{\beta}_{1}-c_{*}\right) & =c_{0}^{2} \operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}\right)+c_{1}^{2} \operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right)+2 c_{0} c_{1} \operatorname{Cov}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}, \hat{\beta}_{1}\right) \\
& =c_{0}^{2} \sigma^{2}\left(\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\bar{x}^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right)+c_{1}^{2} \sigma^{2} \frac{1}{S_{x}^{2}}-2 c_{0} c_{1} \frac{\sigma^{2} \bar{x}}{S_{x}^{2}} \\
& =\sigma^{2}\left[\frac{c_{0}^{2}}{n}+\frac{c_{0}^{2} \bar{x}^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}-2 c_{0} c_{1} \frac{\bar{x}}{S_{x}^{2}}+c_{1}^{2} \frac{1}{S_{x}^{2}}\right] \\
& =\sigma^{2}\left[\frac{c_{0}^{2}}{n}+\frac{\left(c_{0} \bar{x}-c_{1}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Confidence interval: We can give a $1-\alpha$ confidence interval for the parameter $c_{0} \beta_{0}+c_{1} \beta_{1}$ as

$$
c_{0} \hat{\beta}_{0}+c_{1} \hat{\beta}_{1} \mp \tilde{\sigma}\left[\frac{c_{0}^{2}}{n}+\frac{\left(c_{0} \bar{x}-c_{1}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right]^{1 / 2} T_{n-2}^{-1}\left(1-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) .
$$

### 11.3.5 Mean response

We often want to estimate the mean of the probability distribution of $Y$ for some value of $x$.

- The point estimator of the mean response

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(Y \mid x_{h}\right)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{h}
$$

when $x=x_{h}$ is given by

$$
\hat{Y}_{h}=\hat{\beta}_{0}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{h} .
$$

Need to:

- Show that $\hat{Y}_{h}$ is normally distributed.
- Find $\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)$.
- Find $\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)$.
- The sampling distribution of $\hat{Y}_{h}$ is given by

$$
\hat{Y}_{h} \sim N\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{h}, \sigma^{2}\left(\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right)\right) .
$$

## Normality:

Both $\hat{\beta}_{0}$ and $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ are linear combinations of independent normal random variables $Y_{i}$.

Hence, $\hat{Y}_{h}=\hat{\beta}_{0}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{h}$ is also a linear combination of independent normally distributed random variables.

Thus, $\hat{Y}_{h}$ is also normally distributed.

## Mean and variance of $\hat{Y}_{h}$ :

Find the expected value of $\hat{Y}_{h}$ :

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)=\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{h}\right)=\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}\right)+\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right) x_{h}=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{h}
$$

Note that $\hat{Y}_{h}=\bar{Y}-\hat{\beta}_{1} \bar{x}+\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{h}=\bar{Y}+\hat{\beta}_{1}\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)$.
Note that $\hat{\beta}_{1}$ and $\bar{Y}$ are uncorrelated:

$$
\operatorname{Cov}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i} Y_{i}, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n} Y_{i}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{w_{i}}{n} \sigma^{2}=\frac{\sigma^{2}}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i}=0 .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right) & =\operatorname{Var}(\bar{Y})+\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2} \operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}\right) \\
& =\frac{\sigma^{2}}{n}+\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2} \frac{\sigma^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

When we do not know $\sigma^{2}$ we estimate it using $\tilde{\sigma}^{2}$. Thus, the estimated variance of $\hat{Y}_{h}$ is given by

$$
\operatorname{se}^{2}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)=\tilde{\sigma}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right)
$$

The variance of $\hat{Y}_{h}$ is smallest when $x_{h}=\bar{x}$.
When $x_{h}=0$, the variance of reduces to the variance of $\hat{\beta}_{0}$.

- The sampling distribution for the studentized statistic:

$$
\frac{\hat{Y}_{h}-\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)}{\operatorname{se}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)} \sim t_{n-2}
$$

All inference regarding $\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)$ are carried out using the $t$-distribution. A $(1-\alpha)$ CI for the mean response when $x=x_{h}$ is

$$
\hat{Y}_{h} \mp t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2} \operatorname{se}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right) .
$$

### 11.3.6 Prediction interval

A CI for a future observation is called a prediction interval.
Consider the prediction of a new observation $Y$ corresponding to a given level $x$ of the predictor.

Suppose $x=x_{h}$ and the new observation is denoted $Y_{h(n e w)}$.
Note that $\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)$ is the mean of the distribution of $Y \mid X=x_{h}$.
$Y_{h(n e w)}$ represents the prediction of an individual outcome drawn from the distribution of $Y \mid X=x_{h}$, i.e.,

$$
Y_{h(\text { new })}=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x_{h}+\epsilon_{\text {new }},
$$

where $\epsilon_{\text {new }}$ is independent of our data.

- The point estimate will be the same for both.

However, the variance is larger when predicting an individual outcome due to the additional variation of an individual about the mean.

- When constructing prediction limits for $Y_{h(n e w)}$ we must take into consideration two sources of variation:
- Variation in the mean of $Y$.
- Variation around the mean.
- The sampling distribution of the studentized statistic:

$$
\frac{Y_{h(\text { new })}-\hat{Y}_{h}}{\operatorname{se}\left(Y_{h(\text { new })}-\hat{Y}_{h}\right)} \sim t_{n-2} .
$$

All inference regarding $Y_{h(n e w)}$ are carried out using the $t$-distribution:

$$
\operatorname{Var}\left(Y_{h(n e w)}-\hat{Y}_{h}\right)=\operatorname{Var}\left(Y_{h(n e w)}\right)+\operatorname{Var}\left(\hat{Y}_{h}\right)=\sigma^{2}\left\{1+\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right\}
$$

Thus, $\mathrm{se}_{\text {pred }}=\operatorname{se}\left(Y_{h(\text { new })}-\hat{Y}_{h}\right)=\tilde{\sigma}^{2}\left\{1+\frac{1}{n}+\frac{\left(x_{h}-\bar{x}\right)^{2}}{S_{x}^{2}}\right\}$.

Using this result, $(1-\alpha)$ prediction interval for a new observation $Y_{h(n e w)}$ is

$$
\hat{Y}_{h} \mp t_{1-\alpha / 2, n-2} \mathrm{se}_{\text {pred }} .
$$

### 11.3.7 Inference about both $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ simultaneously

Suppose that $\beta_{0}^{*}$ and $\beta_{1}^{*}$ are given numbers and we are interested in testing the following hypothesis:

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}: \beta_{0}=\beta_{0}^{*} \text { and } \beta_{1}=\beta_{1}^{*} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \text { at least one is different } \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall derive the likelihood ratio test for (29).
The likelihood function (27), when maximized under the unconstrained space yields the MLEs $\hat{\beta}_{1}, \hat{\beta}_{1}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}$.

Under the constrained space, $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$ are fixed at $\beta_{0}^{*}$ and $\beta_{1}^{*}$, and so

$$
\hat{\sigma}_{0}^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\beta_{0}^{*}-\beta_{1}^{*} x_{i}\right)^{2}
$$

The likelihood statistic reduces to

$$
\Lambda(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{x})=\frac{\sup _{\sigma^{2}} L\left(\beta_{0}^{*}, \beta_{1}^{*}, \sigma^{2}\right)}{\sup _{\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}} L\left(\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \sigma^{2}\right)}=\left(\frac{\hat{\sigma}^{2}}{\hat{\sigma}_{0}^{2}}\right)^{n / 2}=\left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{\beta}_{0}-\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\beta_{0}^{*}-\beta_{1}^{*} x_{i}\right)^{2}}\right]^{n / 2}
$$

The LRT procedure specifies rejecting $H_{0}$ when

$$
\Lambda(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{x}) \leq k
$$

for some $k$, chosen given the level condition.
Exercise: Show that

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\beta_{0}^{*}-\beta_{1}^{*} x_{i}\right)^{2}=S^{2}+Q^{2}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
S^{2} & =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\hat{\beta}_{0}-\hat{\beta}_{1} x_{i}\right)^{2} \\
Q^{2} & =n\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}-\beta_{0}^{*}\right)^{2}+\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}^{2}\right)\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}-\beta_{1}^{*}\right)^{2}+2 n \bar{x}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0}-\beta_{0}^{*}\right)\left(\hat{\beta}_{1}-\beta_{1}^{*}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,

$$
\Lambda(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{x})=\left[\frac{S^{2}}{S^{2}+Q^{2}}\right]^{n / 2}=\left[1+\frac{Q^{2}}{S^{2}}\right]^{-n / 2}
$$

It can be seen that this is equivalent to rejecting $H_{0}$ when $Q^{2} / S^{2} \geq k^{\prime}$ which is equivalent to

$$
U^{2}:=\frac{\frac{1}{2} Q^{2}}{\tilde{\sigma}^{2}} \geq \gamma
$$

Exercise: Show that, under $H_{0}, \frac{Q^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \sim \chi_{2}^{2}$. Also show that $Q^{2}$ and $S^{2}$ are independent. We know that $S^{2} / \sigma^{2} \sim \chi_{n-2}^{2}$. Thus, under $H_{0}$,

$$
U^{2} \sim F_{2, n-2}
$$

and thus $\gamma=F_{2, n-2}^{-1}(1-\alpha)$.

## 12 Linear models with normal errors

### 12.1 Basic theory

This section concerns models for independent responses of the form

$$
Y_{i} \sim N\left(\mu_{i}, \sigma^{2}\right), \quad \text { where } \quad \mu_{i}=\mathbf{x}_{i}^{\top} \boldsymbol{\beta}
$$

for some known vector of explanatory variables $\boldsymbol{x}_{i}^{\top}=\left(x_{i 1}, \ldots, x_{i p}\right)$ and unknown parameter vector $\boldsymbol{\beta}=\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{p}\right)^{\top}$, where $p<n$.

This is the linear model and is usually written as

$$
\mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}+\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}
$$

(in vector notation) where
$\mathbf{Y}_{n \times 1}=\left(\begin{array}{c}Y_{1} \\ \vdots \\ Y_{n}\end{array}\right), \quad \mathbf{X}_{n \times p}=\left(\begin{array}{c}x_{1}^{\top} \\ \vdots \\ x_{n}^{\top}\end{array}\right), \quad \boldsymbol{\beta}_{p \times 1}=\left(\begin{array}{c}\beta_{1} \\ \vdots \\ \beta_{p}\end{array}\right), \quad \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_{n \times 1}=\left(\begin{array}{c}\varepsilon_{1} \\ \vdots \\ \varepsilon_{n}\end{array}\right), \quad \varepsilon_{i} \stackrel{\text { i.i.d. }}{\sim} N\left(0, \sigma^{2}\right)$.
Sometimes this is written in the more compact notation

$$
\mathbf{Y} \sim N_{n}\left(\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2} \mathbf{I}\right)
$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the $n \times n$ identity matrix.
It is usual to assume that the $n \times p$ matrix $\mathbf{X}$ has full rank $p$.

### 12.2 Maximum likelihood estimation

The $\log$-likelihood (up to a constant term) for $\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}\right)$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}\right) & =-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\mathbf{x}_{i}^{\top} \boldsymbol{\beta}\right)^{2} \\
& =-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\sum_{j=1}^{p} x_{i j} \beta_{j}\right)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

An MLE $\left(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}\right)$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0= \frac{\partial}{\partial \beta_{j}} \ell\left(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{\hat{\sigma}^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i j}\left(y_{i}-\mathbf{x}_{i}^{\top} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right), \quad \text { for } j=1, \ldots, p, \\
& \text { i.e., } \quad \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i j} \mathbf{x}_{i}^{\top} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i j} y_{i} \quad \text { for } j=1, \ldots, p,
\end{aligned}
$$

so

$$
\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right) \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}
$$

Since $\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}$ is non-singular if $\mathbf{X}$ has rank $p$, we have

$$
\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}
$$

The least squares estimator of $\beta$ minimizes

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}\|^{2}
$$

Check that this estimator coincides with the MLE when the errors are normally distributed.

Thus the estimator $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}$ may be justified even when the normality assumption is uncertain.

Theorem 12.1. We have
1.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\beta} \sim N_{p}\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1}\right) \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

2. 

$$
\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2}=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(y_{i}-\mathbf{x}_{i}^{\top} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right)^{2}
$$

and that $\hat{\sigma}^{2} \sim \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n} \chi_{n-p}^{2}$.
3. Show that $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$ and $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ are independent.

Recall: Suppose that $\mathbf{U}$ is an $n$-dimensional random vector for which the mean vector $\mathbb{E}(\mathbf{U})$ and the covariance matrix $\operatorname{Cov}(\mathbf{U})$ exist. Suppose that $\mathbf{A}$ is a $q \times n$ matrix whose elements are constants. Let $\mathbf{V}=\mathbf{A U}$. Then

$$
\mathbb{E}(\mathbf{V})=\mathbf{A} \mathbb{E}(\mathbf{U}) \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{Cov}(\mathbf{V})=\mathbf{A} \operatorname{Cov}(\mathbf{U}) \mathbf{A}^{\top}
$$

Proof of 1: The MLE of $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ is given by $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}$, and we have that the model can be written in vector notation as $\mathbf{Y} \sim N_{n}\left(\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2} \mathbf{I}\right)$.

Let $\mathbf{M}=\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top}$ so that $\mathbf{M Y}=\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$. Therefore,

$$
\mathbf{M Y} \sim N_{p}\left(\mathbf{M X} \boldsymbol{\beta}, \mathbf{M}\left(\sigma^{2} \mathbf{I}\right) \mathbf{M}^{\top}\right)
$$

We have that

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rlrl}
\mathbf{M X} \boldsymbol{\beta} & =\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta} & \text { and } & \mathbf{M M}^{\top}
\end{array}=\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1}\right)
$$

since $\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}$ is symmetric, and then so is it's inverse.

Therefore,

$$
\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}=\mathbf{M} \mathbf{Y} \sim N_{p}\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1}\right)
$$

These results can be used to obtain an exact $(1-\alpha)$-level confidence region for $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ : the distribution of $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$ implies that

$$
\frac{1}{\sigma^{2}}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta}) \sim \chi_{p}^{2}
$$

Let

$$
\tilde{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n-p}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2} \sim \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n-p} \chi_{n-p}^{2}
$$

so that $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$ and $\tilde{\sigma}^{2}$ are still independent.
Then, letting $F_{p, n-p}(\alpha)$ denote the upper $\alpha$-point of the $F_{p, n-p}$ distribution,

$$
1-\alpha=\mathbb{P}_{\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}}\left(\frac{\frac{1}{p}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta})}{\tilde{\sigma}^{2}} \leq F_{p, n-p}(\alpha)\right)
$$

Thus,

$$
\left\{\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{R}^{p}: \frac{\frac{1}{p}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta})}{\tilde{\sigma}^{2}} \leq F_{p, n-p}(\alpha)\right\}
$$

is a $(1-\alpha)$-level confidence set for $\boldsymbol{\beta}$.

### 12.2.1 Projections and orthogonality

The fitted values $\hat{\mathbf{Y}}=\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$ under the model satisfy

$$
\hat{\mathbf{Y}}=\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{Y} \equiv \mathbf{P Y}
$$

say, where $\mathbf{P}$ is an orthogonal projection matrix (i.e., $\mathbf{P}=\mathbf{P}^{\top}$ and $\mathbf{P}^{\mathbf{2}}=\mathbf{P}$ ) onto the column space of $\mathbf{X}$.

Since $\mathbf{P}^{\mathbf{2}}=\mathbf{P}$, all of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{P}$ are either 0 or 1 (Why?).
Therefore,

$$
\operatorname{rank}(\mathbf{P})=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{P})=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{I}_{p}\right)=p
$$

by the cyclic property of the trace operation.

Some authors denote $\mathbf{P}$ by $\mathbf{H}$, and call it the hat matrix because it "puts the hat on $\mathbf{Y}$ ". In fact, $\mathbf{P}$ is an orthogonal projection. Note that in the standard linear model above we may express the fitted values

$$
\hat{\mathbf{Y}}=\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}
$$

as $\hat{\mathbf{Y}}=\mathbf{P Y}$.

Example 12.2 (Problem 1).

1. Show that $\mathbf{P}$ represents an orthogonal projection.
2. Show that $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}$ are positive semi-definite.
3. Show that $\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}$ has rank $n-p$ and $\mathbf{P}$ has rank $p$.

Solution: To see that $\mathbf{P}$ represents a projection, notice that $\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}$ is symmetric, so its inverse is also, so

$$
\mathbf{P}^{\top}=\left\{\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\right\}^{\top}=\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top}=\mathbf{P}
$$

and

$$
\mathbf{P}^{2}=\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top}=\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^{\top}=\mathbf{P}
$$

To see that $\mathbf{P}$ is an orthogonal projection, we must show that $\mathbf{P Y}$ and $\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}$ are orthogonal. But from the results above,

$$
(\mathbf{P Y})^{\top}(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y})=\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P}^{\top}(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y})=\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{0}
$$

$\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}$ is positive semi-definite since

$$
\mathbf{x}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{x}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{x}=\|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{x}\|^{\mathbf{2}} \geq \mathbf{0}
$$

Similarly, $\mathbf{P}$ is positive semi-definite.

Theorem 12.3 (Cochran's theorem). Let $\mathbf{Z} \sim N_{n}\left(\mathbf{0}, \sigma^{2} \mathbf{I}\right)$, and let $\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{1}}, \ldots, \mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{k}}$ be $n \times n$ positive semi-definite matrices with $\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathbf{A}_{i}\right)=r_{i}$, such that

$$
\|\mathbf{Z}\|^{2}=\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{A}_{1} \mathbf{Z}+\ldots+\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{A}_{k} \mathbf{Z}
$$

If $r_{1}+\cdots+r_{k}=n$, then $\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{A}_{1} \mathbf{Z}, \ldots, \mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{A}_{k} \mathbf{Z}$ are independent, and

$$
\frac{\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{A}_{i} \mathbf{Z}}{\sigma^{2}} \sim \chi_{r_{i}}^{2}, \quad i=1, \ldots, k
$$

Example 12.4 (Problem 2). In the standard linear model above, find the maximum likelihood estimator $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$ of $\sigma^{2}$, and use Cochran's theorem to find its distribution.

Solution: Differentiating the log-likelihood

$$
\ell\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^{2}\right)=-\frac{n}{2} \log \sigma^{2}-\frac{1}{2 \sigma^{2}}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}\|^{2}
$$

we see that an MLE $\left(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}\right)$ satisfies

$$
0=\left.\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \sigma^{2}}\right|_{\left(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}\right)}=-\frac{n}{2 \hat{\sigma}^{2}}+\frac{1}{2 \hat{\sigma}^{4}}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2}
$$

so

$$
\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2} \equiv \frac{1}{n}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2},
$$

where $\mathbf{P}=\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}^{\top}$. Observe that

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{\mathbf{2}}=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}
$$

and from the previous question we know that $\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{P}$ are positive semidefinite and of rank $n-p$ and $p$, respectively. We cannot apply Cochran's theorem directly since $\mathbf{Y}$ does not have mean zero. However, $\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}$ does have mean zero and

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}) \\
&=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{2} \boldsymbol{\beta}^{\top} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\right) \mathbf{Y}+\boldsymbol{\beta}^{\top} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{X}\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}^{\top}\right) \mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta} \\
&=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}\|^{\mathbf{2}}=(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})+(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top} \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})
$$

we may therefore apply Cochran's theorem to deduce that

$$
\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}=(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}) \sim \sigma^{2} \chi_{n-p}^{2}
$$

and hence

$$
\hat{\sigma}^{2}=\frac{1}{n}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{\mathbf{2}}=\frac{1}{n}(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta})^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}) \sim \frac{\sigma^{2}}{n} \chi_{n-p}^{2}
$$

### 12.2.2 Testing hypotheis

Suppose that we want to test

$$
H_{0}: \beta_{j}=\beta_{j}^{*} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{0}: \beta_{j} \neq \beta_{j}^{*}
$$

for some $j \in\{1, \ldots, p\}$, where $\beta_{j}^{*}$ is a fixed number. We know that

$$
\hat{\beta}_{j} \sim N\left(\beta_{j}, \zeta_{j j} \sigma^{2}\right)
$$

where $\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1}=\left(\left(\zeta_{i j}\right)\right)_{p \times p}$. Thus, we know that

$$
T=\frac{\hat{\beta}_{j}-\beta_{j}^{*}}{\sqrt{\tilde{\sigma}^{2} \zeta_{j j}}} \sim t_{n-p} \text { under } H_{0}
$$

where we have used Theorem 12.1.

### 12.3 Testing for a component of $\beta$ - not included in the final exam

Now partition $\mathbf{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ as

Suppose that we are interested in testing

$$
H_{0}: \boldsymbol{\beta}_{1}=0, \quad \text { against } \quad H_{1}: \boldsymbol{\beta}_{1} \neq 0
$$

Then, under $H_{0}$, the MLEs of $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$ and $\sigma^{2}$ are

$$
\hat{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\beta}}}_{0}=\left(\mathbf{X}_{\mathbf{0}}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{\mathbf{0}}\right)^{-\mathbf{1}} \mathbf{X}_{\mathbf{0}}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}, \quad \quad \hat{\hat{\sigma}}^{2}=\frac{1}{n}\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \hat{\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}}_{0}\right\|^{2}
$$

$\hat{\hat{\beta}}_{0}$ and $\hat{\hat{\sigma}}^{2}$ are independent. The fitted values under $H_{0}$ are

$$
\hat{\hat{\mathbf{Y}}}=\mathbf{X}_{0} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{0}=\mathbf{X}_{0}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}
$$

where $P_{0}=\mathbf{X}_{0}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top}$ is an orthogonal projection matrix of rank $p_{0}$.

The likelihood ratio statistic is

$$
\begin{aligned}
-2 \log \Lambda & =2\left\{-\frac{n}{2} \log \left(\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2}\right)-\frac{n}{2}+\frac{n}{2} \log \left(\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{0}\right\|^{2}\right)+\frac{n}{2}\right\} \\
& =n \log \left(\frac{\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{0}\right\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2}}\right)=n \log \left(\frac{\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

We therefore reject $H_{0}$ if the ratio of the residual sum of squares under $H_{0}$ to the residual sum of squares under $H_{1}$ is large.

Rather than use Wilks' theorem to obtain the asymptotic "null distribution" of the test statistic [which anyway depends on unknown $\sigma^{2}$ ], we can work out the exact distribution in this case.

Since $(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y})^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right)=\mathbf{0}$, Pythagorean theorem gives that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}=\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2} \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using (31),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}} & =\frac{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}}+\frac{\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}} \\
& =1+\frac{\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Consider the decomposition:

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}\|^{2}=\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}
$$

and a similar one for $\mathbf{Z}=\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$.
Under $H_{0}, \mathbf{Z} \sim N\left(\mathbf{0}, \sigma^{2} \mathbf{I}\right)$. This allows the use of Cochran's theorem to ultimately conclude that $\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}$ and $\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}$ are independent $\sigma^{2} \chi_{p-p_{0}}^{2}$ and $\sigma^{2} \chi_{n-p}^{2}$ random variables, respectively.

Example 12.5 (Problem 3). Let $\mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\beta}+\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$, where $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ are partitioned as $\mathbf{X}=\left(\mathbf{X}_{0} \mid \mathbf{X}_{1}\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{\beta}^{T}=\left(\boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}^{T} \mid \boldsymbol{\beta}_{1}^{T}\right)$ respectively (where $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$ has $p_{0}$ components and $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{1}$ has $p-p_{0}$ components).

1. Show that

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}\|^{2}=\left\|\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}+\left\|\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}\right) \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}+\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}
$$

2. Recall that the likelihood ratio statistic for testing

$$
H_{0}: \boldsymbol{\beta}_{1}=\mathbf{0} \quad \text { against } \quad H_{1}: \boldsymbol{\beta}_{1} \neq \mathbf{0}
$$

is a strictly increasing function of $\left\|\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}\right) \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2} /\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}$.
Use Cochran's theorem to find the joint distribution of $\left\|\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}$ and $\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}$ under $H_{0}$. How would you perform the hypothesis test?
[Hint: $\operatorname{rank}(\boldsymbol{P})=p$, and $\operatorname{rank}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})=n-p$. Similar arguments give that $\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}\right)=p_{0}$.

Solution: 1. Recall that since $(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y})^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right)=0$ Pythagorean theorem gives that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2} & =\left\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2} \\
& =\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right)^{\top}\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right) \\
& =\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}-2 \mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}+\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y} \\
& =\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{Y}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{P}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{Y} \\
& =\|\mathbf{Y}\|^{2}-\left\|\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

giving that

$$
\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}=\|\mathbf{Y}\|^{2}
$$

as desired.
2. Under $H_{0}$, the response vector $\mathbf{Y}$ has mean $\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$, and so $\mathbf{Z}=\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{Z}\|^{2} & =\|\mathbf{Z}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Z}\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Z}-\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Z}\right\|^{2}+\left\|\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Z}\right\|^{2} \\
& =\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{Z}-2 \mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{Z}+\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{P}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{Z}+\mathbf{Z}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right)^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Z}+\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Z} \\
& =\mathbf{Z}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Z}+\mathbf{Z}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Z}+\mathbf{Z}^{\top} \mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{Z} .
\end{aligned}
$$

But

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{Z}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Z} & =\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}\right)^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right)\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}\right) \\
& =\mathbf{Y}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}-2 \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}+\boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0} \in U_{0}$ and $\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y} \in U_{0}^{\perp}$, and $U_{0}$ and $U_{0}^{\perp}$ are mutually orthogonal, and moreover $\mathbf{P} \mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}=\mathbf{P}_{0} \mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}=\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}$, this gives
$\mathbf{Z}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Z}=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}$,
Similarly,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{Z}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Z} & =\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}\right)^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})\left(\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}\right) \\
& =\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}-2 \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}+\boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}^{\top} \mathbf{X}_{0}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0} \\
& =\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y},
\end{aligned}
$$

since $\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0} \in U_{0}$ and $(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y} \in U^{\perp} \subseteq U_{0}^{\perp}$, while $(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}=\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}-$ $\mathbf{X}_{0} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{0}=0$. Since

$$
\operatorname{rank}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})+\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right)+\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathbf{P}_{0}\right)=n-p+p-p_{0}+p_{0}=n
$$

we may therefore apply Cochran's theorem to deduce that under $H_{0}, \|(\mathbf{P}-$ $\left.\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y} \|^{2}$ and $\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P Y}\|^{2}$ are independent with

$$
\left\|\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{Z}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Z} \sim \sigma^{2} \chi_{p-p_{0}}^{2}
$$

and

$$
\|(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}=\mathbf{Y}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}=\mathbf{Z}^{\top}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Z} \sim \sigma^{2} \chi_{n-p}^{2}
$$

It follows that under $H_{0}$,

$$
F=\frac{\frac{1}{p-p_{0}}\left\|\left(\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}_{0}\right) \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\frac{1}{n-p}\|(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}} \sim F_{p-p_{0}, n-p},
$$

so we may reject $H_{0}$ if $F>F_{p-p_{0}, n-p}(\alpha)$, where $F_{p-p_{0}, n-p}(\alpha)$ is the upper $\alpha$-point of the $F_{p-p_{0}, n-p}$ distribution.

Thus under $H_{0}$,

$$
F=\frac{\frac{1}{p-p_{0}}\left\|\mathbf{P Y}-\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}} \mathbf{Y}\right\|^{2}}{\frac{1}{n-p}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{P} \mathbf{Y}\|^{2}} \sim F_{p-p_{0}, n-p}
$$

When $\mathbf{X}_{0}$ has one less column than $\mathbf{X}$, say column $k$, we can leverage the normality of the MLE $\hat{\beta}_{k}$ in (30) to perform a $t$-test based on the statistic

$$
T=\frac{\hat{\beta}_{k}}{\sqrt{\tilde{\sigma}^{2} \operatorname{diag}\left[\left(\mathbf{X}^{\top} \mathbf{X}\right)^{-1}\right]_{k}}} \sim t_{n-p} \text { under } H_{0} \quad\left[\text { i.e., } \beta_{k}=0\right] .
$$

[This is what R uses, though the more general $F$-statistic can also be used in this case.]

The above theory also shows that under $H_{1}, \frac{1}{n-p}\|\mathbf{Y}-\mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\|^{2}$ is an unbiased estimator of $\sigma^{2}$. This is usually used in preference to the MLE, $\hat{\sigma}^{2}$.

## Example 12.6. 1. Multiple linear regression:

For countries $i=1, \ldots, n$, consider how the fertility rate $Y_{i}$ (births per 1000 females in a particular year) depends on

- the gross domestic product per capita $x_{i 1}$
- and the percentage of urban dwellers $x_{i 2}$.

The model

$$
\log Y_{i}=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \log x_{i 1}+\beta_{2} x_{i 2}+\varepsilon_{i}, \quad i=1, \ldots, n
$$

with $\varepsilon_{i} \stackrel{i . i . d .}{\sim} N\left(0, \sigma^{2}\right)$, is of linear model form $Y=X \beta+\varepsilon$ with

$$
Y=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\log Y_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\log Y_{n}
\end{array}\right), \quad X=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \log x_{11} & x_{12} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
1 & \log x_{n 1} & x_{n 2}
\end{array}\right), \quad \beta=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\beta_{0} \\
\beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2}
\end{array}\right), \quad \varepsilon=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\varepsilon_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\varepsilon_{n}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

On the original scale of the response, this model becomes

$$
Y=\exp \left(\beta_{0}\right) \exp \left(\beta_{1} \log x_{1}\right) \exp \left(\beta_{2} x_{2}\right) \varepsilon
$$

Notice how the possibility of transforming variables greatly increases the flexibility of the linear model. [But see how using a log response assumes that the errors enter multiplicatively.]

### 12.4 One-way analysis of variance (ANOVA)

Consider measuring yields of plants under a control condition and $J-1$ different treatment conditions.

The explanatory variable (factor) has $J$ levels, and the response variables at level $j$ are $Y_{j 1}, \ldots, Y_{j n_{j}}$. The model that the responses are independent with

$$
Y_{j k} \sim N\left(\mu_{j}, \sigma^{2}\right), \quad j=1, \ldots, J ; \quad k=1, \ldots, n_{j}
$$

is of linear model form, with

$$
Y=\left(\begin{array}{c}
Y_{11} \\
\vdots \\
Y_{1 n_{1}} \\
Y_{21} \\
\vdots \\
Y_{2 n_{2}} \\
\vdots \\
Y_{J 1} \\
\vdots \\
Y_{J n_{J}}
\end{array}\right) \quad X=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
1 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
& & \vdots & & \\
0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & 1 \\
\vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)\left\{n_{1}\right.
$$

An alternative parameterization, emphasizing the differences between treatments, is

$$
Y_{j k}=\mu+\alpha_{j}+\varepsilon_{j k}, \quad j=1, \ldots, J ; \quad k=1, \ldots, n_{j}
$$

where

- $\mu$ is the baseline or mean effect
- $\alpha_{j}$ is the effect of the $j^{\text {th }}$ treatment (or the control $j=1$ ).

Notice that the parameter vector $\left(\mu, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{J}\right)^{\top}$ is not identifiable, since replacing $\mu$ with $\mu+10$ and $\alpha_{j}$ by $\alpha_{j}-10$ gives the same model. Either a

- corner point constraint $\alpha_{1}=0$ is used to emphasise the differences from the control, or the
- sum-to-zero constraint $\sum_{j=1}^{J} n_{j} \alpha_{j}=0$
can be used to make the model identifiable. R uses corner point constraints.

If $n_{j}=K$, say, for all $j$, the data are said to be balanced.

We are usually interested in comparing the null model

$$
H_{0}: Y_{j k}=\mu+\varepsilon_{j k}
$$

with that given above, which we call $H_{1}$, i.e., we wish to test whether the treatment conditions have an effect on the plant yield:

$$
H_{0}: \alpha=0, \text { where } \alpha=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{J}\right), \quad \text { against } \quad H_{1}: \alpha \neq 0
$$

Check that the MLE fitted values are

$$
\hat{Y}_{j k}=\bar{Y}_{j} \equiv \frac{1}{n_{j}} \sum_{k=1}^{n_{j}} Y_{j k}
$$

under $H_{1}$, whatever parameterization is chosen, and are

$$
\hat{\hat{Y}}_{j k}=\bar{Y} \equiv \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{J} n_{j} \bar{Y}_{j}, \quad \text { where } n=\sum_{j=1}^{J} n_{j}
$$

under $H_{0}$.
Theorem 12.7. (Partitioning the sum of squares) We have

$$
S S_{\text {total }}=S S_{\text {within }}+S S_{\text {between }},
$$

where
$S S_{\text {total }}=\sum_{j=1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{n_{j}}\left(Y_{j k}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}, \quad S S_{\text {within }}=\sum_{j=1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{n_{j}}\left(Y_{j k}-\bar{Y}_{j}\right)^{2}, \quad S S_{\text {between }}=\sum_{j=1}^{J} n_{j}\left(\bar{Y}_{j}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}$.
Furthermore, $S S_{\text {within }}$ has $\sigma^{2} \chi^{2}$-distribution with $(n-J)$ degrees of freedom and is independent of $S S_{\text {between }}$. Also, under $H_{0}, S S_{\text {between }} \sim \sigma^{2} \chi_{J-1}^{2}$.

Our linear model theory says that we should test $H_{0}$ by referring

$$
F=\frac{\frac{1}{J-1} \sum_{j=1}^{J} n_{j}\left(\bar{Y}_{j}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}}{\frac{1}{n-J} \sum_{j=1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{n_{j}}\left(Y_{j k}-\bar{Y}_{j}\right)^{2}} \equiv \frac{\frac{1}{J-1} S_{2}}{\frac{1}{n-J} S_{1}}
$$

to $F_{J-1, n-J}$, where $S_{1}$ is the "within groups" sum of squares and $S_{2}$ is the "between groups" sum of squares. We have the following ANOVA table.

| Source of variation | Degrees of freedom | Sum of squares | $F$-statistic |
| ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Between groups | $J-1$ | $S_{2}$ | $F=\frac{\frac{1}{J-1} S_{2}}{\frac{1}{n-J} S_{1}}$ |
| Within groups | $n-J$ | $S_{1}$ |  |
| Total | $n-1$ | $S_{1}+S_{2}=\sum_{j=1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{n_{j}}\left(Y_{j k}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}$ |  |

## 13 Nonparametrics

### 13.1 The sample distribution function

Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be i.i.d $F$, where $F$ is an unknown distribution function.
Question: We want to estimate $F$ without assuming any specific parametric form for $F$.

Empirical distribution function (EDF): For each $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we define $F_{n}(x)$ as the proportion of observed values in the sample that are less than of equal to $x$, i.e.,

$$
F_{n}(x)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I_{(-\infty, x]}\left(X_{i}\right) .
$$

The function $F_{n}$ defined in this way is called the sample/empirical distribution function.


Idea: Note that

$$
F(x)=\mathbb{P}(X \leq x)=\mathbb{E}\left[I_{(-\infty, x]}(X)\right]
$$

Thus, given a random sample, we can find an unbiased estimator of $F(x)$ by looking at the proportion of times, among the $X_{i}$ 's, we observe a value $\leq x$.

By the WLLN, we know that

$$
F_{n}(x) \xrightarrow{p} F(x), \quad \text { for every } x \in \mathbb{R} .
$$

Theorem 13.1. Glivenko-Cantelli Theorem. Let $F_{n}$ be the sample c.d.f from an i.i.d sample $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ from the c.d.f $F$. Then,

$$
D_{n}:=\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}}\left|F_{n}(x)-F(x)\right| \xrightarrow{p} 0 .
$$

By the CLT, we have

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(F_{n}(x)-F(x)\right) \xrightarrow{d} N(0, F(x)(1-F(x))), \quad \text { for every } x \in \mathbb{R} .
$$




As $F_{n}(x) \xrightarrow{p} F(x)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we can also say that

$$
\frac{\sqrt{n}\left(F_{n}(x)-F(x)\right)}{\sqrt{F_{n}(x)\left(1-F_{n}(x)\right)}} \xrightarrow{d} N(0,1), \quad \text { for every } x \in \mathbb{R} .
$$

Thus, an asymptotic $(1-\alpha)$ CI for $F(x)$ is

$$
\left[F_{n}(x)-\frac{z_{\alpha / 2}}{\sqrt{n}} \sqrt{F_{n}(x)\left(1-F_{n}(x)\right)}, F_{n}(x)+\frac{z_{\alpha / 2}}{\sqrt{n}} \sqrt{F_{n}(x)\left(1-F_{n}(x)\right)}\right] .
$$

Likewise, we can also test the hypothesis $H_{0}: F(x)=F_{0}(x)$ versus $H_{1}: F(x) \neq F_{0}(x)$ for some known fixed c.d.f $F_{0}$, and $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

### 13.2 The Kolmogorov-Smirnov goodness-of-fit test

Suppose that we wish to test the simple null hypothesis that the unknown c.d.f $F$ is actually a particular continuous c.d.f $F^{*}$ against the alternative that the actual c.d.f is not $F^{*}$, i.e.,

$$
H_{0}: F(x)=F^{*}(x) \quad \text { for } x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad H_{0}: F(x) \neq F^{*}(x) \quad \text { for some } x \in \mathbb{R} .
$$

This is a nonparametric ("infinite" dimensional) problem.
Let

$$
D_{n}^{*}=\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}}\left|F_{n}(x)-F^{*}(x)\right| .
$$

$D_{n}^{*}$ is the maximum difference between the sample c.d.f $F_{n}$ and the hypothesized c.d.f $F^{*}$.

We should reject $H_{0}$ when

$$
n^{1 / 2} D_{n}^{*} \geq c_{\alpha} .
$$

This is called the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test.

How do we find $c_{\alpha}$ ?
When $H_{0}$ is true, the distribution of $D_{n}^{*}$ will have a certain distribution that is the same for every possible continuous c.d.f $F$. (Why?)

Note that, under $H_{0}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
D_{n}^{*} & =\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}}\left|\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I\left(X_{i} \leq x\right)-F^{*}(x)\right| \\
& =\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}}\left|\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I\left(F^{*}\left(X_{i}\right) \leq F^{*}(x)\right)-F^{*}(x)\right| \\
& =\sup _{F^{*}(x) \in \mathbb{R}}\left|\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I\left(U_{i} \leq F^{*}(x)\right)-F^{*}(x)\right|=\sup _{t \in[0,1]}\left|\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} I\left(U_{i} \leq t\right)-t\right| \\
& =\sup _{t \in[0,1]}\left|F_{n, U}(t)-t\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

where $U_{i}:=F^{*}\left(X_{i}\right) \sim \operatorname{Uniform}(0,1)$ (i.i.d) and $F_{n, U}$ is the EDF of the $U_{i}$ 's. Thus, $D_{n}^{*}$ is distribution-free.

Theorem 13.2. (Distribution-free property) Under $H_{0}$, the distribution of $D_{n}^{*}$ is the same for all continuous distribution functions $F$.

We also have the following theorem.
Theorem 13.3. Under $H_{0}$, as $n \rightarrow \infty$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
n^{1 / 2} D_{n}^{*} \xrightarrow{d} H, \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $H$ is a valid c.d.f.

In fact, the exact sampling distribution of the KS statistic, under $H_{0}$, can be approximated by simulations, i.e., we can draw $n$ data points from a $\operatorname{Uniform}(0,1)$ distribution and recompute the test statistic multiple times.

### 13.2.1 The Kolmogorov-Smirnov test for two samples

Consider a problem in which a random sample of $m$ observations $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ is taken from the unknown c.d.f $F$, and an independent random sample of $n$ observations $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}$ is taken from another distribution with unknown c.d.f $G$.

It is desired to test the hypothesis that both these functions, $F$ and $G$, are identical, without specifying their common form. Thus the hypotheses we want to test are:

$$
H_{0}: F(x)=G(x) \quad \text { for } x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad H_{0}: F(x) \neq G(x) \quad \text { for some } x \in \mathbb{R} .
$$

We shall denote by $F_{m}$ the EDF of the observed sample $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$, and by $G_{n}$ the EDF of the sample $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}$.

We consider the following statistic:

$$
D_{m, n}=\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}}\left|F_{m}(x)-G_{n}(x)\right| .
$$

When $H_{0}$ holds, the sample EDFs $F_{m}$ and $G_{n}$ will tend to be close to each other. In fact, when $H_{0}$ is true, it follows from the Glivenko-Cantelli lemma that

$$
D_{m, n} \xrightarrow{p} 0 \quad \text { as } m, n \rightarrow \infty .
$$

$D_{m, n}$ is also distribution-free (why?)
Theorem 13.4. Under $H_{0}$,

$$
\left(\frac{m n}{m+n}\right)^{1 / 2} D_{m, n} \xrightarrow{d} H,
$$

where $H$ is a the same c.d.f as in (32).

A test procedure that rejects $H_{0}$ when

$$
\left(\frac{m n}{m+n}\right)^{1 / 2} D_{m, n} \geq c_{\alpha}
$$

where $c_{\alpha}$ (is the $(1-\alpha)$-quantile of $H$ ) is an appropriate constant, is called a KolmogorovSmirnov two sample test.

Exercise: Show that this test statistic is also distribution-free under $H_{0}$. Thus, the critical of the test can be obtained via simulations.

### 13.3 Bootstrap

Example 1: Suppose that we model our data $\mathbf{X}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ as coming from some distribution with c.d.f $F$ having median $\theta$.

Suppose that we are interested in using the sample median $M$ as an estimator of $\theta$.
We would like to estimate the MSE (mean squared error) of $M$ (as an estimator of $\theta$ ), i.e., we would like to estimate

$$
\mathbb{E}\left[(M-\theta)^{2}\right] .
$$

We may also be interested in finding a confidence interval for $\theta$.
Example 2: Suppose that $\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(X_{n}, Y_{n}\right)$ is a random sample from a distribution $F$. We are interested in the distribution of the sample correlation coefficient:

$$
R=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)}{\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}\right]^{1 / 2}}
$$

We might be interested in the variance of $R$, or the bias of $R$, or the distribution of $R$ as an estimator of the correlation $\rho$ between $X$ and $Y$.

Question: How do we get a handle on these problems?

How would we do it if an oracle told us $F$ ?
Bootstrap: The bootstrap is a method of replacing (plug-in) an unknown distribution function $F$ with a known distribution in probability/expectation calculations.
If we have a sample of data from the distribution $F$, we first approximate $F$ by $\hat{F}$ and then perform the desired calculation.

If $\hat{F}$ is a good approximation of $F$, then bootstrap can be successful.

### 13.3.1 Bootstrap in general

Let $\eta(\mathbf{X}, F)$ be a quantity of interest that possibly depends on both the distribution $F$ and a sample $\mathbf{X}$ drawn from $F$.

In general, we might wish to estimate the mean or a quantile or some other probabilistic feature or the entire distribution of $\eta(\mathbf{X}, F)$.

The bootstrap estimates $\eta(\mathbf{X}, F)$ by $\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*}, \hat{F}\right)$, where $\mathbf{X}^{*}$ is a random sample drawn from the distribution $\hat{F}$, where $\hat{F}$ is some distribution that we think is close to $F$.

How do we find the distribution of $\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*}, \hat{F}\right)$ ?
In most cases, the distribution of $\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*}, \hat{F}\right)$ is difficult to compute, but we can approximate it easily by simulation.

The bootstrap can be broken down in the following simple steps:

- Find a "good" estimator $\hat{F}$ of $F$.
- Draw a large number (say, $v$ ) of random samples $\mathbf{X}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}^{(v)}$ from the distribution $\hat{F}$ and then compute $T^{(i)}=\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*(i)}, \hat{F}\right)$, for $i=1, \ldots, v$.
- Finally, compute the desired feature of $\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*}, \hat{F}\right)$ using the sample c.d.f of the values $T^{(1)}, \ldots, T^{(v)}$.


### 13.3.2 Parametric bootstrap

Example 1: (Estimating the standard deviation of a statistic)
Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ is random sample from $N\left(\mu, \sigma^{2}\right)$.
Suppose that we are interested in the parameter

$$
\theta=\mathbb{P}(X \leq c)=\Phi\left(\frac{c-\mu}{\sigma}\right)
$$

where $c$ is a given known constant.
What is the MLE of $\theta$ ?

The MLE of $\theta$ is

$$
\hat{\theta}=\Phi\left(\frac{c-\bar{X}}{\hat{\sigma}}\right) .
$$

Question: How do we calculate the standard deviation of $\hat{\theta}$ ? There is no easy closed form expression for this.

Solution: We can bootstrap!
Draw many (say $v$ ) bootstrap samples of size $n$ from $N\left(\bar{X}, \hat{\sigma}^{2}\right)$. For the $i$-th sample we compute a sample average $\bar{X}^{*(i)}$, a sample standard deviation $\hat{\sigma}^{*(i)}$.

Finally, we compute

$$
\hat{\theta}^{*(i)}=\Phi\left(\frac{c-\bar{X}^{*(i)}}{\hat{\sigma}^{*(i)}}\right) .
$$

We can estimate the mean of $\hat{\theta}$ by

$$
\bar{\theta}^{*}=\frac{1}{v} \sum_{i=1}^{v} \hat{\theta}^{*(i)}
$$

The standard deviation of $\hat{\theta}$ can then be estimated by the sample standard deviation of the $\hat{\theta}^{*(i)}$ values, i.e.,

$$
\left[\frac{1}{v} \sum_{i=1}^{v}\left(\hat{\theta}^{*(i)}-\bar{\theta}^{*}\right)^{2}\right]^{1 / 2}
$$

Example 2: (Comparing means when variances are unequal) Suppose that we have two samples $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ and $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}$ from two possibly different normal populations. Suppose that

$$
X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m} \text { are i.i.d } N\left(\mu_{1}, \sigma_{1}^{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n} \text { are i.i.d } N\left(\mu_{2}, \sigma_{2}^{2}\right)
$$

Suppose that we want to test

$$
H_{0}: \mu_{1}=\mu_{2} \quad \text { versus } \quad H_{1}: \mu_{1} \neq \mu_{2}
$$

We can use the test statistic

$$
U=\frac{(m+n-2)^{1 / 2}\left(\bar{X}_{m}-\bar{Y}_{n}\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{m}+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(S_{X}^{2}+S_{Y}^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}}
$$

Note that as $\sigma_{1}^{2} \neq \sigma_{2}^{2}, U$ does not necessarily follow a $t$-distribution.
How do we find the cut-off value of the test?
The parametric bootstrap can proceed as follows:
First choose a large number $v$, and for $i=1, \ldots, v$, simulate $\left(\bar{X}_{m}^{*(i)}, \bar{Y}_{n}^{*(i)}, S_{X}^{2 *(i)}, S_{Y}^{2 *(i)}\right)$, where all four random variables are independent with the following distributions:

- $\bar{X}_{m}^{*(i)} \sim N\left(0, \hat{\sigma}_{1}^{2} / m\right)$.
- $\bar{Y}_{n}^{*(i)} \sim N\left(0, \hat{\sigma}_{2}^{2} / n\right)$.
- $S_{X}^{2 *(i)} \sim \hat{\sigma}_{1}^{2} \chi_{m-1}^{2}$.
- $S_{Y}^{2 *(i)} \sim \hat{\sigma}_{2}^{2} \chi_{n-1}^{2}$.

Then we compute

$$
U^{*(i)}=\frac{(m+n-2)^{1 / 2}\left(\bar{X}_{m}^{*(i)}-\bar{Y}_{n}^{*(i)}\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{m}+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{1 / 2}\left(S_{X}^{2 *(i)}+S_{Y}^{2 *(i)}\right)^{1 / 2}}
$$

for each $i$.
We approximate the null distribution of $U$ by the distribution of the $U^{*(i)}$ 's.
Let $c^{*}$ be the $\left(1-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$-quantile of the distribution of $U^{*(i)}$ 's. Thus we reject $H_{0}$ if

$$
|U|>c^{*}
$$

### 13.3.3 The nonparametric bootstrap

Back to Example 1: Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be a random sample from a distribution $F$.
Suppose that we want a CI for the median $\theta$ of $F$.
We can base a CI on the sample median $M$.
We want the distribution of $M-\theta$ !
Let $\eta(\mathbf{X}, F)=M-\theta$.
We approximate the $\alpha / 2$ and the $1-\alpha / 2$ quantiles of the distribution of $\eta(\mathbf{X}, F)$ by that of $\eta\left(\mathbf{X}^{*}, \hat{F}\right)$.

We may choose $\hat{F}=F_{n}$, the empirical distribution function. Thus, our method can be broken in the following steps:

- Choose a large number $v$ and simulate many samples $\mathbf{X}^{*(i)}$, for $i=1, \ldots, n$, from $F_{n}$. This reduces to drawing with replacement sampling from $\mathbf{X}$.
- For each sample we compute the sample median $M^{*(i)}$ and then find the sample quantiles of $\left\{M^{*(i)}-M\right\}_{i=1}^{v}$.

Back to Example 2: Suppose that $\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(X_{n}, Y_{n}\right)$ is a random sample from a distribution $F$. We are interested in the distribution of the sample correlation coefficient:

$$
R=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)}{\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{i}-\bar{X}\right)^{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(Y_{i}-\bar{Y}\right)^{2}\right]^{1 / 2}}
$$

We might be interested in the bias of $R$, i.e., $\eta(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, F)=R-\rho$.
Let $F_{n}$ be the discrete distribution that assigns probability $1 / n$ to each of the $n$ data points.

Thus, our method can be broken in the following steps:

- Choose a large number $v$ and simulate many samples from $F_{n}$. This reduces to drawing with replacement sampling from the original paired data.
- For each sample we compute the sample correlation coefficient $R^{*(i)}$ and then find the sample quantiles of $\left\{T^{*(i)}=R^{*(i)}-R\right\}_{i=1}^{v}$.
- We estimate the mean of $R-\rho$ by the average $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{v} T^{*(i)}$.


## 14 Review

### 14.1 Statistics

- Estimation: Maximum likelihood estimation (MLE); large sample properties of the MLE; Information matrix; method of moments.
- Consistency of estimators; Mean squared error and its decomposition; unbiased estimation; minimum variance unbiased estimator; sufficiency.
- Bayes estimators: prior distribution; posterior distribution.
- Sampling distribution of an estimator; sampling from a normal distribution; $t$-distribution.

Exercise: Suppose that $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ form a random sample from a normal distribution with mean 0 and unknown variance $\sigma^{2}$. Determine the asymptotic distribution of the statistic $T=\left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}\right)^{-1}$.

Solution: We know that $X_{i}^{2}$ 's are i.i.d with mean $\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)=\sigma^{2}$ and $\operatorname{Var}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)=\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{4}\right)-$ $\left[\mathbb{E}\left(X_{1}^{2}\right)\right]^{2}=2 \sigma^{4}$. Note that $X_{i}^{2}$ 's have a $\chi_{1}^{2}$ distribution. Thus, by the CLT, we have

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}-\sigma^{2}\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0,2 \sigma^{4}\right) .
$$

Let $g(x)=x^{-1}$. Thus, $g^{\prime}(x)=-x^{-2}$. Therefore,

$$
\sqrt{n}\left(T-\sigma^{-2}\right) \xrightarrow{d} N\left(0,2 \sigma^{4} \cdot \sigma^{-8}\right) .
$$

Exercise: Consider i.i.d observations $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ where each $X_{i}$ follows a normal distribution with mean and variance both equal to $1 / \theta$, where $\theta>0$. Thus,

$$
f_{\theta}(x)=\frac{\sqrt{\theta}}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} \exp \left[-\frac{\left(x-\theta^{-1}\right)^{2}}{2 \theta^{-1}}\right] .
$$

Show that the MLE is one of the solutions to the equation:

$$
\theta^{2} W-\theta-1=0,
$$

where $W=n^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}$. Determine which root it is and compute its approximate variance in large samples.

Solution: We have the log-likelihood (up to a constant) as

$$
\ell(\theta)=\frac{n}{2} \log \theta-\frac{\theta}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}+n \bar{X}-\frac{n}{2 \theta} .
$$

Therefore, the score equation is

$$
\begin{array}{ll} 
& \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \theta}=\frac{n}{2 \theta}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}^{2}+\frac{n}{2 \theta^{2}}=0 \\
\text { i.e., } & \frac{1}{2 \theta}-\frac{1}{2} W+\frac{1}{2 \theta^{2}}=0 \\
\text { i.e., } & W \theta^{2}-\theta-1=0
\end{array}
$$

The two roots are given by

$$
\frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1+4 W}}{2 W}
$$

and the admissible root is

$$
\hat{\theta}_{M L E}=\frac{1+\sqrt{1+4 W}}{2 W}
$$

We know that

$$
\hat{\theta}_{M L E} \sim N\left(\theta, \frac{1}{n I(\theta)}\right) \quad \text { (approximately) }
$$

Thus the approximate variance of $\hat{\theta}_{M L E}$ is $\frac{1}{n I(\theta)}$, where

$$
I(\theta)=-\mathbb{E}_{\theta}\left[\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial \theta^{2}} \log f_{\theta}\left(X_{1}\right)\right]=\frac{1}{2 \theta^{2}}+\frac{1}{\theta^{3}} .
$$

- Confidence intervals; Cramer-Rao information inequality.

Exercise: A biologist is interested in measuring the ratio of mean weight of animals of two species. However, the species are extremely rare and after much effort she succeeds in measuring the weight of one animal from the first species and one from the second. Let $X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ denote these weights. It is assumed that $X_{i} \sim N\left(\theta_{i}, 1\right)$, for $i=1,2$. Interest lies in estimating $\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}$.
Compute the distribution of

$$
h\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \theta_{1}, \theta_{2}\right)=\frac{\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2}}{\sqrt{\theta_{1}^{2}+\theta_{2}^{2}}}
$$

Is

$$
\frac{X_{1}-\left(\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}\right) X_{2}}{\sqrt{\left(\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}\right)^{2}+1}}
$$

a pivot? Discuss how you can construct a confidence set for the ratio of mean weights.

Solution: Note that $\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2} \sim N\left(0, \theta_{1}^{2}+\theta_{2}^{2}\right)$ as

$$
\mathbb{E}\left(\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2}\right)=\theta_{2} \theta_{1}-\theta_{1} \theta_{2}=0
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{Var}\left(\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2}\right)=\operatorname{Var}\left(\theta_{2} X_{1}\right)+\operatorname{Var}\left(\theta_{1} X_{2}\right)=\theta_{2}^{2}+\theta_{1}^{2}
$$

Thus,

$$
h\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \theta_{1}, \theta_{2}\right)=\frac{\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2}}{\sqrt{\theta_{1}^{2}+\theta_{2}^{2}}} \sim N(0,1)
$$

Now,

$$
\frac{X_{1}-\left(\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}\right) X_{2}}{\sqrt{\left(\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}\right)^{2}+1}}=\frac{\theta_{2} X_{1}-\theta_{1} X_{2}}{\sqrt{\theta_{1}^{2}+\theta_{2}^{2}}} \sim N(0,1)
$$

and is thus indeed a pivot.
To get a confidence set for $\eta:=\theta_{1} / \theta_{2}$, we know that

$$
\begin{array}{ll} 
& \mathbb{P}\left[-z_{\alpha / 2} \leq \frac{X_{1}-\eta X_{2}}{\sqrt{\eta^{2}+1}} \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right]=1-\alpha \\
\text { i.e., } & \mathbb{P}\left[\frac{\left|X_{1}-\eta X_{2}\right|}{\sqrt{\eta^{2}+1}} \leq z_{\alpha / 2}\right]=1-\alpha \\
\text { i.e., } & \mathbb{P}\left[\left(X_{1}-\eta X_{2}\right)^{2}-\left(\eta^{2}+1\right)^{2} z_{\alpha / 2} \leq 0\right]=1-\alpha .
\end{array}
$$

Thus,

$$
\left\{\eta:\left(X_{1}-\eta X_{2}\right)^{2}-\left(\eta^{2}+1\right)^{2} z_{\alpha / 2} \leq 0\right\}
$$

gives a level $(1-\alpha)$ confidence set for $\eta$. This can be expressed explicitly in terms of the roots of the quadratic equation involved.

- Hypothesis testing: Null and the alternative hypothesis; rejection region; Type I and II errorx; power function; size (level) of a test; equivalence of tests and confidence sets; $p$-value; Neyman-Pearson lemma; uniformly most powerful test.
- t-test; $F$-test; likelihood ratio test
- Linear models: method of least squares; regression; Simple linear regression; inference on $\beta_{0}$ and $\beta_{1}$; mean response; prediction interval;
- General linear model; MLE; projection; one-way ANOVA

Exercise: Processors usually preserve cucumbers by fermenting them in a low-salt brine ( $6 \%$ to $9 \%$ sodium chloride) and then storing them in a high-salt brine until they are used by processors to produce various types of pickles. The high-salt brine is needed to retard softening of the pickles and to prevent freezing when

| Weeks (X) in Storage at $72^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ | 0 | 4 | 14 | 32 | 52 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Firmness (Y) in pounds | 19.8 | 16.5 | 12.8 | 8.1 | 7.5 |

they are stored outside in northern climates. Data showing the reduction in firmness of pickles stored over time in a low-salt brine ( $2 \%$ to $3 \%$ ) are given in the following table.
(a) Fit a least-squares line to the data.
(b) Compute $R^{2}$ to evaluate the goodness of the fit to the data points?
(c) Use the least-squares line to estimate the mean firmness of pickles stored for 20 weeks.
(d) Determine the $95 \% \mathrm{CI}$ for $\beta_{1}$.
(e) Test the null hypothesis that $Y$ does not depend on $X$ linearly.

Solution: (a) Fit a least-squares line to the data.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widehat{\beta_{1}}=\frac{S_{x y}}{S_{x x}}=\frac{-425.48}{1859.2}=-0.229 \\
& \widehat{\beta_{0}}=\bar{y}-\widehat{\beta_{1}} \bar{x}=12.94-(-0.229)(20.4)=17.612 \\
& \widehat{y}=17.612-0.229 x
\end{aligned}
$$

(b) Compute $R^{2}$ to evaluate the goodness of the fit to the data points?

$$
R^{2}=1-\frac{S S E}{S S T}=1-\frac{15.4}{112.772}=0.863
$$

(c) Use the least-squares line to estimate the mean firmness of pickles stored for 20 weeks.

$$
\widehat{y}(20)=17.612-(0.229)(20)=13.0
$$

(d) Determine the $95 \%$ CI for $\beta_{1}$.

The $95 \%$ CI for $\beta_{1}$ is given by

$$
\widehat{\beta}_{1} \pm t_{0.025,3} S E\left(\widehat{\beta}_{1}\right) \quad \text { where } \quad S E\left(\widehat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\frac{s}{\sqrt{S_{x x}}} .
$$

We have $s=\sqrt{S S E / 3}=\sqrt{(15.4) / 3}=2.266$, thus $S E\left(\widehat{\beta}_{1}\right)=\frac{2.66}{\sqrt{1859.2}}=$ 0.052. Thus the $95 \%$ CI for $\beta_{1}$ is

$$
-0.229 \pm(3.18)(0.052)=[-0.396,-0.062]
$$

(e) Test the null hypothesis that $Y$ does not depend on $X$ linearly.

We test the hypothesis

$$
H_{0}: \beta_{1}=0 \quad \text { vs. } \quad H_{a}: \beta_{1} \neq 0
$$

with level at $\alpha=0.05$. This can be tested with t-statistic

$$
T=\frac{\widehat{\beta}_{1}}{S E\left(\widehat{\beta}_{1}\right)} \quad \text { and } \quad R R:|t|>t_{0.025,3}=3.18
$$

The observed $t=\frac{-0.229}{0.052}=-4.404$, which is in the rejection region. Thus we reject the hypothesis that $\beta_{1}=0$. This means based on the data we reject $H_{0}$.

Exercise: A manager wishes to determine whether the mean times required to complete a certain task differ for the three levels of employee training. He randomly selected 10 employees with each of the three levels of training (Beginner, Intermediate and Advanced). Do the data provide sufficient evidence to indicate that the mean times required to complete a certain task differ for at least two of the three levels of training? The data is summarized in the following table. Use the level $\alpha=0.05$.

|  | $\overline{x_{i}}$ | $s_{i}^{2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Advanced | 24.2 | 21.54 |
| Intermediate | 27.1 | 18.64 |
| Beginner | 30.2 | 17.76 |

Solution: Let $\alpha_{i}$ denote the mean effect of $i$ th training level; advanced $=1$, intermediate $=2$ and beginner $=3$. We test the hypothesis

$$
H_{0}: \alpha_{1}=\alpha_{2}=\alpha_{3} \quad \text { vs. } \quad H_{a}: \alpha_{i} \neq \alpha_{j} \quad \text { for some } i \text { and } j
$$

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\overline{x_{1}} & =24.2 \quad \bar{x}_{2 .}=27.1 \quad \bar{x}_{3 .}=30.2 \\
\bar{x} . . & =\frac{1}{3}(24.2+27.1+30.2)=27.17 \\
S S B & =10\left((24.2-27.17)^{2}+(27.1-27.17)^{2}+(30.2-27.17)^{2}\right)=180.1 \\
S S W & =9(21.54+18.64+17.76)=521.46
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we have the following ANOVA-table:

| Source of variations | df | SS | MS | F |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Treatments | 2 | 180.1 | 90.03 | 4.67 |
| Errors | 27 | 521.46 | 19.31 |  |
| Total | 29 | 683.52 |  |  |

Since the observed $f=4.67$ is in $R R: f>f_{0.05,2,27}=3.35$, we reject the $H_{0}$. Thus the levels of training appear to have different effects on the mean times required to complete the task.

- The empirical distribution function; goodness-of-fit-tests; Kolmogorov-Smirnov tests.

Read the following sections from the text book for the final:

- Chapter 6 excluding 6.4
- Chapter 7 excluding 7.8, 7.9
- Chapter 8 excluding 8.6
- Chapter 9 excluding 9.3, 9.8, 9.9
- Chapter 11 excluding 11.4, 11.7, 11.8

Thank you!

Please complete course evaluations!

Questions?


[^0]:    ${ }^{1} X$ has an exponential distribution with (failure) rate $\theta>0$, i.e., $X \sim \operatorname{Exp}(\theta)$, if the p.d.f of $X$ is given by

    $$
    f_{\theta}(x)=\theta e^{-\theta x} \mathbf{1}_{[0, \infty)}(x), \quad \text { for } x \in \mathbb{R}
    $$

    The mean (or expected value) of $X$ is given by $\mathbb{E}(X)=\theta^{-1}$, and the variance of $X$ is $\operatorname{Var}(X)=\theta^{-2}$.

[^1]:    ${ }^{2}$ Explain why do we need to restrict our attention to continuity points of $F$. (Hint: think of the following sequence of distributions: $F_{n}(u)=I(u \geq 1 / n)$, where the "indicator" function of a set $A$ is one if $x \in A$ and zero otherwise.)

    It's worth emphasizing that convergence in distribution - because it only looks at the c.d.f. - is in fact weaker than convergence in probability. For example, if $p_{X}$ is symmetric, then the sequence $X,-X, X,-X, \ldots$ trivially converges in distribution to $X$, but obviously doesn't converge in probability.

    Also, if $U \sim \operatorname{Unif}(0,1)$, then the sequence

    $$
    U, 1-U, U, 1-U, \ldots
    $$

    converge in distribution to a uniform distribution. But obviously they do not converge in probability.

